

# FOMA<sup>®</sup> P906i

ISSUE DATE:

'08.4

NAME:

PHONE NUMBER:

MAIL ADDRESS:

INSTRUCTION MANUAL



Easy Search/Contents/Precautions	
Before Using the Handset	
Voice/Videophone Calls	
PushTalk	
Phonebook	
Sound/Screen/Light Settings	
Security Settings	
Camera	
i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel	
Mail	
i-appli	
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa	
GPS Function	
1Seg	
Full Browser/PC Movie	
Data Display/Edit/Management	
Music&Video Channel/Music Playback	
Convenient Functions	
Character Entry	
Network Services	
PC Connection	
Overseas Use	
Appendix/External Devices Troubleshooting	
Index/Quick Manual	

## DoCoMo W-CDMA · GSM/GPRS system

### Thank you for selecting the “FOMA P906i”.

Before or during use of the FOMA P906i, make sure that you read this manual and the separate manuals for other optional devices thoroughly so that you can use the FOMA P906i correctly.

If you feel any inconvenience in reading the manual, contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed on the back page of this manual.

The FOMA P906i is designed to be your close partner. Treat it carefully at all times to ensure long-term performance.

### Before using your FOMA phone

- Because the FOMA phones use radio waves, they cannot be used in places where radio waves do not reach, such as inside tunnels, underground, or in buildings; or the outside where radio waves are weak or out of the FOMA service area. They may not be used in the high-rise buildings even when the antennas are unobstructed. You may also experience interruption of calls even when using without moving while the radio waves are strong enough for the three antennas to appear on the display.
- Use the FOMA phone carefully to avoid disturbing other people when in public, or in crowded or quiet places.
- Since the FOMA phones use radio waves as the medium of telecommunication, calls may be tapped by the third party. However, the W-CDMA · GSM/GPRS system automatically supports tapping prevention, so your conversation will be incomprehensible to the third party.
- The FOMA phones change your voice into digital signals and send them to the other party. In places where the radio waves are weak, the digital signals may not be converted correctly, and in such a case, the voice may sound different from the actual original voice.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifiers as listed herein make any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifiers shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.  
Certifiers: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust, Inc., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Inc., and SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd.
- This FOMA phone supports FOMA Plus-Area and FOMA High-Speed Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo and in DoCoMo's roaming area.

- It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information (such as Phonebook entries, schedule events, text memos, record messages, voice memos, movie memos) stored in the FOMA phone and keep them in a safe place. Note that we cannot be held responsible for the unlikely event of loss of the stored contents due to a malfunction, repair, change of your model, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone.
- You are advised to save your important data files to the microSD card. If you have a personal computer, you can transfer and save the information such as Phonebook entries, mail messages, schedule events, and others to the personal computer by using DoCoMo keitai datalink.

### For Using This Manual

**This FOMA phone supports Kisekai Tool (page 121). If you use Kisekai Tool to change the design of the Menu display, some menu configurations change according to the usage frequency depending on the type of the menu. Further, some menu numbers that are assigned to the menu items do not apply. In that case, you cannot operate as described in this manual, so you are advised to switch to the basic structure menu (page 121), or reset menu settings (page 121).**

**You can download the latest information about this manual from the following DoCoMo web site:**

· **User's Manual (PDF file) Download**  
(<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>)

※ **The URL and the content of the web site might be modified without notice.**

## How to Read/Refer to This Manual

In this manual, illustrations and symbols are used in the explanations so that you can correctly and easily use the FOMA phone.

- The operating procedures and displays in this manual are described with the default settings of the "White" handset mainly. However, the following settings are changed.
  - "Display setting" → "Stand-by display": OFF
  - "Display setting" → "Standby disp. Wide": OFF
  - "Display setting" → "Clock" → "Position": Pattern 2
  - "Menu icon setting": Metal
- Unless otherwise specified, the descriptions of the operating procedures in this manual start from the Stand-by display.
- Operations are described in the method of "Scroll Selection" (see page 33).
- Displays and illustrations described in this manual are for reference. The actual ones might differ.
- In this manual, "Osai-fu-Keitai compatible i-øppli which supports the IC card function" is described as "Osai-fu-Keitai compatible i-øppli".
- Note that "FOMA P906" is referred to as "FOMA phone" in this manual.
- In the operating procedures of this manual, key operations are described with simplified key icons.
- The functions which use a microSD card are described in this manual; however, you need to obtain a microSD card separately to make these functions available. See page 355 for the microSD card.

## How to Refer to This Manual

By the following search methods, you can find pages where your desired functions and services are described:

### From the Index

Search from the index when you know the names of functions or services.

### From Easy Search

Search from keywords for the functions you frequently use or the functions that are convenient if you can know any.

### From the Tabs on the Cover

Search from the tabs printed on the cover.

See the next page for details.

### From the Contents ▶▶ P.6

Search from the contents that categorize functions.

### From the Main Functions ▶▶ P.8

Search from here to use the main functions.

### From the Function List ▶▶ P.482

Search from the function list.

### From Quick Manual ▶▶ P.550

Quick Manual gives you a clear, brief description about basic functions. You can take it when you go out. Further, Quick Manual "For Overseas Use" is attached, so refer to it when you use the FOMA phone overseas.

It is prohibited to copy all or part of this manual without permission.  
The instructions contained in this manual may be changed without notice.

How to search for “Alarm” is explained here as an example of search method.

## From the Index

▶▶ P.542

Search for a function or a service name as shown on the right.

Alarm	
Alarm clock1	OFF
Alarm clock2	OFF
Alarm clock3	OFF
Alarm clock4	OFF
Alarm clock5	OFF

Additional service	462
Additional guidance	463
Address link function	188
Alarm	408
Answer setting	418
Answer setting	66
Antenna	27

## From Easy Search

▶▶ P.4

Search for the function you frequently use or that is convenient if you can know any as shown on the right.

Other things you can do	
To reduce the battery consumption	<Power Saver Mode> 118
To scan QR codes or bar codes	<Bar Code Reader> 165
To check the location where you are, or the surroundings	<GPS Function> 278
To use the microSD card	<microSD Cards> 355
To exchange information using infrared rays	<Infrared Data Exchange> 367
To listen to music	<MUSIC Player> 392
To use the FOMA phone as an alarm clock	<Alarm> 408
To use the FOMA phone as a calculator	<Calculator> 421
To use the FOMA phone overseas	<International Roaming> 472
To bring software programs up to date	<Software Update> 528
To bring security up to date	<Scanning Function> 534

Go to page 408 where “Alarm” is explained.

## From the Tabs on the Cover

▶▶ Cover page

Search for the function you want to set in the order of “Cover” → “First page of Chapter” → “Description page” as shown on the right.

Osafu-Keita/ToruCo	■
GPS Function	■
1Seg	■
Full Browser/PC Movie	■
Data Display/Edit/Management	■
Music&Video Channel/Music Playback	■
Convenient Functions	■
Character Entry	■
Network Services	■
PC Connection	■
Overseas Use	■
Appendix/External Devices	■
Troubleshooting	■
Index/Quick Manual	■

Multitask	<Multitask>	405
Informing You of an Incoming Call/Mail Message by Voice	<Reading Aloud>	406
Turning Power On/Off Automatically at a Specified Time	<Auto Power ON/OFF>	408
Using Alarm	<Alarm>	408
Using Calendar to Manage Schedule	<Schedule>	411
Using ToDo to Manage Schedule	<ToDo>	415
Setting Operating Conditions of Alarm	<Alarm Setting>	416

Function name  
You can find this in  
Index.

Menu number  
(See page 35)

Items shown on the  
display  
(Some items cannot  
be executed.)

Operating  
procedure  
(See page 33)

Reference display  
(Characters and settings  
are for reference.)

Operation and  
supplementary  
explanation for each  
item

Lower sub-menu item  
of the Function menu

Chapter title

Cautions or  
references for using  
each function

Operations related to  
the function and  
explanations for  
supplementary  
operations

You can  
search by  
chapter.

Options and their  
explanations

Convenient Functions

## <Alarm> Using Alarm

You can set Alarm to alert you at the specified time with an alarm tone, animation and illumination. You can store up to twelve alarms.

- 1 MENU Stationery Alarm  
Highlight an alarm and press [Edit].



to the following operations.

Function name	Operation/Explanation
Alarm	You can set whether to validate or invalidate the alarm. ▶ ON or OFF
Time	▶ Enter the time for sounding the alarm. ● You cannot set the same time as the time set for the stored alarm.
Tone	▶ Select a type of alarm tone ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an alarm tone.
Volume	▶ Use [Volume] to adjust the volume. ● If you set "Step", the alarm tone is silent for about three seconds, and then the volume steps up every about three seconds, from Level 1 through Level 6.
Prefer manner mode	You can set the alarm tone which sounds at the specified time during Manner Mode. ON or OFF ON: ... Sounds at the same volume as set for "Alarm volume". OFF: ... Sounds at the volume set for this function.

2 Press [Finish].

## Function Menu while Alarm is Displayed

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Edit	Go to step 1 of "Using Alarm" on page 408.
Detail	You can display the stored alarm contents.
Set this	You can validate the stored alarm. ▶ YES ● You can validate also by pressing [ON].
Set all	You can validate all the stored alarm. ▶ YES
Delete	▶ Delete this ▶ YES
Delete (Delete all)	▶ Enter you Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

### Information

- During a call, the alarm tone sounds at the level set for "Volume" (earpiece volume).
- When you set the power to automatically turn on and an alarm to sound, the default alarm tone sounds if the alarm which is set with the UIM restrictions has been selected.
- Turn off the FOMA phone after setting "Auto power ON" to "OFF" when you are near electronic devices using high-precision control or weak signals, or where the use is prohibited such as in airplanes and hospitals.

### When you set an alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", and "ToDo"

The icon appears on the desktop.

- ▶ ... Displayed when an alarm is set for today (except the setting for past time).
- ▶ ... Displayed when an alarm is set for tomorrow or onward only.
- If you set "Alarm" of the stored schedule event/ToDo item to "OFF", the icons are not displayed.

408

Note: The page above is a sample.

# Easy Search

To retrieve the operation for the desired function with simple words, refer to the following:

## To know convenient functions for making calls

To/Not to notify your phone number to the other party .....<Caller ID Notification>	47
To switch to a videophone call during a voice call .....<Switch to Videophone Call>	53
To change a volume level of the other party's voice .....<Volume>	67
To put a call on hold during a call.....<Holding>	68

## To do the following when you cannot answer calls

To put an incoming call on hold before answering .....<On Hold>	68
To convey the message that you need to refrain from talking on the phone .....<Public Mode (Drive Mode)>	69
.....<Public Mode (Power Off)>	70
To record voice/video messages.....<Record Message Setting>	71

## To change melody or illumination

To adjust the ring volume .....<Ring Volume>	68
To change ring tones according to callers.....<Add to Phonebook>	92
To change ring tones.....<Select Ring Tone>	108
To know incoming calls by vibrator .....<Vibrator>	110
To silence the keypad sound.....<Keypad Sound>	111
To activate Manner Mode.....<Manner Mode>	112
To change colors/lighting patterns of Call indicator for incoming calls .....<Illumination>	122

## To change/know display settings

To know the meaning of marks (icons) on the display .....<Display>	30
To change the menu display .....<Simple Menu>	38
To change the Stand-by display (Wallpaper) .....<Display Setting>	115
To display a calendar on the Stand-by display .....<Calendar>	115
To change the character size .....<Character Size>	129

## To make full use of mail

To send Deco-mail .....<Deco-mail>	202
To send images .....<Attachments>	210
To sort and save mail automatically .....<Auto-sort>	231

## To make full use of camera

To change the shooting size .....<Image Size>	160
To save to the microSD card .....<Storage Setting (Store In)>	162
To display shot images .....<Picture Viewer>	330

### To use the FOMA phone with a sense of security

To lock the FOMA phone from away when it gets lost ....	<Omakase Lock>*1	135
To keep Phonebook entries from prying eyes .....	<Secret Mode>	141
To reject calls without a caller ID .....	<Call Setting without ID>	144
To reject calls from the phone numbers not in the Phonebook .....	<Reject Unknown>	145
To separately store Phonebook and other data files in preparation for their erasure .....	<Data Security Service>*2	145

\*1 This is a pay service.

\*2 This is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.

### To make full use of 1Seg

To watch 1Seg programs .....	<Activate 1Seg>	295
To record 1Seg programs.....	<Record Video> <Record Still Images>	303
To book/To set timer recording for 1Seg programs .....	<Book Program> <Timer Recording>	304
To change settings of video and audio .....	<User Settings>	309

### Other things you can do

To reduce the battery consumption .....	<Power Saver Mode>	118
To scan QR codes or bar codes .....	<Bar Code Reader>	165
To check the location where you are,or the surroundings .....	<GPS Function>	278
To use the microSD card .....	<microSD Card>	355
To exchange information using infrared rays.....	<Infrared Data Exchange>	367
To listen to music .....	<MUSIC Player>	392
To use the FOMA phone as an alarm clock .....	<Alarm>	408
To use the FOMA phone as a calculator .....	<Calculator>	421
To use the FOMA phone overseas .....	<International Roaming>	472
To bring software programs up to date .....	<Software Update>	528
To bring security up to date .....	<Scanning Function>	534

- The operating procedures for frequently used functions are summarized in Quick Manual. (See page 550)

# Contents

How to Read/Refer to This Manual ... 1	Safety Precautions ..... 12
Easy Search.....4	Notes on Handling..... 18
Contents .....6	Intellectual Property Rights..... 22
Main Functions of FOMA P906i .....8	Accessories and Main Options ..... 24
Making Full Use of FOMA P906i! ....10	

<b>Before Using the Handset</b> 25	Phone Parts and Functions, Style, Display, Method for Selecting Menu, Simple Menu, Guide, UIM (FOMA Card), Battery, Charging, Power ON/OFF, Initial Setting, Set Time, Select Language, Caller ID Notification, Own Number, etc.
<b>Voice/Videophone Calls</b> 49	Making a Call/Videophone Call, Call Records, Chaku-moji, WORLD CALL, Hands-free, Receiving a Call/Videophone Call, Volume, Ring Volume, Public Mode (Drive Mode), Public Mode (Power Off), Record Message Setting, Chara-den, etc.
<b>PushTalk</b> 81	What is PushTalk?, Making a PushTalk Call, Add Member, Receiving a PushTalk Call, PushTalk Phonebook, Setting PushTalk Calling/Receiving, etc.
<b>Phonebook</b> 91	Available Phonebooks, Add to Phonebook (FOMA phone/UIM), Group Setting, Search Phonebook, No. of Phonebook, Two-touch Dial, Voice Dial, Data Security Service, etc.
<b>Sound/Screen/Light Settings</b> 107	Select Ring Tone, Vibrator, Manner Mode, Display Setting, Backlight, Menu Icon Setting, Kisekae Tool, Horizontal Open Menu, Feel * Mail, Illumination, Desktop Icon, Font, etc.

<b>Security Settings</b> 131	Passwords, Change Security Code, Releasing PIN Lock, Lock All, Omakase Lock, Self Mode, Personal Data Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, Secret Mode, Mail Security, Call Setting without ID, Reject Unknown, etc.
<b>Camera</b> 147	Before Using Cameras, Still Image Shoot, Moving Image Shoot, Settings for Shooting Images, Setting Image Size/Image Quality, Bar Code Reader, Text Reader
<b>i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel</b> 171	What is i-mode?, ☺ Menu, My Menu, Change i-mode Password, Enter URL, Bookmark, Screen Memo, Download, Upload, SSL Certificate, Client Certificate, What is i-motion?, What is i-Channel?, etc.
<b>Mail</b> 197	i-mode Mail, Deco-mail, Decome-Anime, Template, Attachments, Mail Auto-receive, Receive Option, Check New Message, Message R/F, What is Emergency Alert "Area Mail"?, Chat Mail, SMS, Web Mail, etc.
<b>i-appli</b> 249	What is i-appli?, i-appli Download, i-appli Run, ☺ appli Settings, Starting i-appli Automatically, i-appli Stand-by Display, ☺ appli(microSD)
<b>OsaiFu-Keitai/ToruCa</b> 265	What is OsaiFu-Keitai?, What is iC Transfer Service?, IC Card Content, Check IC Owner, What is ToruCa?, Obtain ToruCa Files, ToruCa Viewer, ToruCa File List/Detailed ToruCa File Display, ToruCa Settings, IC Card Lock



<b>GPS Function</b> 277	About Using GPS Function, Position Location, GPS compatible i-appli, Provide Location, Notify of Location, Location History, Service Settings, GPS Settings	<b>Character Entry</b> 435	Character Entry, Mode 1 (5-touch), Common Phrases, Cut/Copy/Paste, Own Dictionary, Learned Words, Download Dictionary, Mode 2 (2-touch), Mode 3 (NIKO-touch)
<b>1Seg</b> 291	What is 1Seg?, Before Using 1Seg, Channel Setting, Activate 1Seg, Program Guide i-appli, Data Broadcasting, TVlink, Recording 1Seg, Book Program/Timer Recording, User Settings	<b>Network Services</b> 445	Check New Messages, Voice Mail, Call Waiting, Call Forwarding, Nuisance Call Blocking, Caller ID Request, Dual Network, Service Numbers, Remote Control, Multi Number, 2in1, OFFICEED, etc.
<b>Full Browser/ PC Movie</b> 313	Full Browser, Full Browser Settings, What is PC Movie?, Downloading PC Movies, PC Movie Player	<b>PC Connection</b> 465	Available Data Communication, Before Using, Preparation Flow for Data Transfer (OBEX™ Communication), Preparation Flow for Data Communication, AT Command, CD-ROM, DoCoMo Keitai Datalink
<b>Data Display/Edit/ Management</b> 327	Data Box, Picture Viewer, i-motion Player, Video Player, Chara-den, Melody Player, Kisekae Tool, microSD Card, Voice Recorder, PDF Viewer, Document Viewer, etc.	<b>Overseas Use</b> 471	Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING), Available Services, Confirmation for Using, Making a Call from the Country You Stay, Receiving a Call, Switch 3G/GSM, Set Roaming Guidance, Network Services, etc.
<b>Music&amp;Video Channel/ Music Playback</b> 383	What is Music&Video Channel?, Setting Programs, Playing Back/Operating Programs, Playing Back Music, Saving Music Files, MUSIC Player, Playlist	<b>Appendix/ External Devices/ Troubleshooting</b> 481	Function List, Options and Related Equipment, Troubleshooting, Error Messages, Warranty and Maintenance Services, i-mode Trouble Diagnosis Site, Software Update, Scanning Function, Specifications, SAR, Export Administration Regulations, etc.
<b>Convenient Functions</b> 403	Multiaccess, Multitask, Reading Aloud, Alarm, Schedule, ToDo, Own Number, Voice Memo, Movie Memo, Call Data, Calculator, Text Memo, UIM Operation, Bluetooth Function, Reset Settings, Initialize, etc.	<b>Index/ Quick Manual</b> 541	Index, Quick Manual, Quick Manual "For Overseas Use"

## Main Functions of FOMA P906i

**FOMA (Freedom Of Mobile multimedia Access) is the name of the DoCoMo service based on the W-CDMA format, authorized as one of the world's standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).**

### Remarkable i-mode!

i-mode is an online service that enables you to get useful information from i-mode menu sites (programs) or i-mode web pages. This service also enables you to send or receive mail messages with ease.

### ◆i-mode mail/Deco-mail/Deco-mail pictogram ▶▶ P.198, P.202, P.328

Besides mail text, you can attach photo or movie file, etc. The FOMA phone supports Deco-mail/Deco-mail pictograms, so you can change the character color, character size, and background color of mail text, and insert images and moving pictographs. Further, Decome-Anime enables you to compose joyful mail messages with animations contained just by inserting messages into the Decome-Anime template.

### ◆International Roaming ▶▶ P.472

You can use your FOMA phone, phone number, and mail address overseas as they are. (Supported in GSM/3G area)

Voice calls, videophone calls, i-mode, i-mode mail, SMS, and network services are available.

“日英版/日中版 シャべって翻訳 for P (J-E/J-C Speech Translation for P)”, which translates spoken Japanese into English or Chinese and spoken English or Chinese into Japanese, is pre-installed.

### ◆High-Speed Area Supported ▶▶ P.466

FOMA High-Speed Area is supported so that high speed communication is available with download speed of up to 3.6 Mbps and upload speed of up to 384 kbps.

※The maximum speeds of 3.6 Mbps and 384 kbps denote the maximum speeds specified by the technical standards. The actual speeds differ depending on the extent how networks are congested or communication environment. Your communication is enabled at the maximum 384 kbps of both upload and download speeds when you are out of FOMA High-Speed area, or are connecting to an access point that does not support HIGH-SPEED such as mopera.

### ◆GPS ▶▶ P.278

You can use the location information obtained by GPS to search for a map of your location and information of the surrounding area and navigate yourself to your destination. The pre-installed “地図アプリ (Map Application)” enables you to easily use the highly accurate map.

### ◆Mega i-oppli/Intuitive Games ▶▶ P.250

You can enjoy playing games or have stock price information or weather forecasts updated automatically. In addition, the intuitive games are supported, which you can play by inclining, swinging, or talking your FOMA phone as you sense.

### ◆Chaku-uta Full®/Uta-hodai/Music&Video Channel※/Video Clips ▶▶ P.193, P.384, P.390, P.392

This FOMA phone supports Chaku-uta Full® that enables you to download a whole music file and Uta-hodai that enables you to enjoy listening music as much as you like at a flat rate.

This FOMA phone also supports Music&Video Channel that, just by setting up beforehand, automatically downloads music programs and programs containing moving images in the night. Further, this FOMA phone supports up to 10 Mbytes of i-motion movies, so it also supports Video Clip that enables you to enjoy a whole music clip file.

●“Chaku-uta Full” is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Inc.

※This is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.

### ◆OsaiFu-Keitai/ToruCa ▶▶ P.266, P.268

By downloading OsaiFu-Keitai compatible i-oppli, you can replenish electronic money from a site into the IC card in the FOMA phone and check your account for the balance and usage details. In addition, the “DCMX” i-oppli program that provides the DoCoMo credit service is pre-installed. Further, “iC transfer service” is supported so that you can easily move data from the existing IC card to a new one when you replace your FOMA phone such as at the time of phone model change.

ToruCa is an electronic card that you can obtain from scanning devices or sites and can easily exchange using mail or infrared data exchange.

### ◆Kisekai Tool ▶▶ P.121, P.354

You can change the Stand-by display or Menu display of your favorite at a time.

You can change the order of displayed menus on P906i according to the frequency of use to customize the Menu display as you like.

#### ◆Bluetooth Function ▶▶ P.425

The wirelessly-connected FOMA phone and a Bluetooth device enable you to talk or listen to music while you are carrying the FOMA phone in your bag.

#### ◆Feel \* Mail ▶▶ P.122

Animation of 45 characters and illumination reproduce the atmosphere of mail messages. Pleasant animation appears or illumination lights according to the contents of mail message.

#### ◆Wide VGA Display

You can display still or moving images in the Wide VGA (480 dots x 854 dots) display of approx. 3.1 inches, and you can enjoy watching 1Seg programs on the impressive display. Also, the light sensor automatically adjusts the backlight in accordance with the ambient brightness, and the LCD AI compensates the image quality in accordance with the brightness.

#### ◆Horizontal Open Style ▶▶ P.28

You can watch 1Seg programs and videos on the horizontal full display in Horizontal Open Style. Further, you can see the Internet web pages with Full Browser without scrolling sideways.

#### ◆One-push Open ▶▶ P.28

##### ■One-push Answer ▶▶ P.66

When a call comes in, just press the one-push open button, and you can open the FOMA phone to answer the call.

##### ■Recv. Mail/Call at Open ▶▶ P.118

When a missed call or new mail message is found, just press the one-push open button, and you can open the FOMA phone to display the detailed Missed Call display or the Inbox list.

#### ◆View Blind ▶▶ P.119

You can make the display hard to see from an angle. You can use the FOMA phone without being gazed at by others.

#### ◆Face Detection ▶▶ P.160

You can shoot still images adjusting the camera focus on person's face automatically.

#### ◆Document Viewer ▶▶ P.378

On your FOMA phone, you can display Microsoft Word files, Microsoft Excel files, and Microsoft PowerPoint files created by personal computers.

#### ◆Voice Recorder ▶▶ P.373

You can record your voice as a substitute for taking notes. You can repeatedly play it back, so it is convenient to record the proceedings at a meeting, etc.

#### ◆Security Settings ▶▶ P.131

Various settings such as the lock functions and security settings for "safety" are available.

##### ■Omakase Lock ▶▶ P.135

When you have lost the FOMA phone, you can lock the FOMA phone and release it by contacting DoCoMo.

For inquiries, see the back page of this manual.

Omakase Lock is a pay service<sup>※</sup>.

※ You are not charged if you apply for this service at the same time as applying for the suspension of the use or during the suspension.

● Note that Omakase Lock might be activated by an offer from the contractor of the FOMA phone when the contractor and the user of the FOMA phone differ.

##### ■Data Security Service ▶▶ P.145

This service enables you to save Phonebook entries, images, and mail messages from your FOMA phone to the Data Storage Center, and restore the saved data, when you lost your FOMA phone or in other cases, to your FOMA phone from the Data Storage Center. Further, you can edit or manage data held at the Data Storage Center using your personal computer and can reflect the edited data to your FOMA phone.

For details on Data Security Service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version". For inquiries, see the back page of this manual.

Data Security Service is a pay service that is available on a subscription basis.

#### ◆Network Services ▶▶ P.445

- Voice Mail Service (Charged)
  - A separate subscription is required.
- Call Forwarding Service (Free)
  - A separate subscription is required.
- Dual Network Service (Charged)
  - A separate subscription is required.
- 2in1 (Charged)
  - A separate subscription is required.
- Call Waiting Service (Charged)
  - A separate subscription is required.
- Nuisance Call Blocking Service (Free)
  - No subscription is required.
- Multi Number (Charged)
  - A separate subscription is required.
- SMS (Free)
  - No subscription is required.

## Making Full Use of FOMA P906i!

### ◆Videophone ▶▶ P.50

You can talk with a person who is away from you, seeing each other. By the default setting, the voice of the other party is set to be output from the speakers, so you can start talking immediately. You can switch, without disconnecting, from an ordinary voice call to a videophone call.

### ◆1Seg ▶▶ P.292

You can watch 1Seg (terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service for mobile objects) programs in smooth picture by the function of Mobile W-Speed. You can display captions and data broadcasting, and record a program while watching it. Use Book Program or Timer Recording not to miss an opportunity to watch or record programs. When an i-mode mail message comes in while you are watching a program, you can check the mail message in the multiwindow or by tickers. You can use the multiwindow to compose i-mode mail messages as well while watching a 1Seg program.

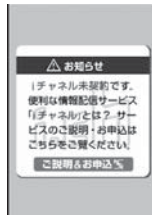


### ◆i-Channel ▶▶ P.195

i-Channel distributes graphical information such as news or weather forecast. By selecting a channel you want to see from the Channel list, you can obtain detailed expressive information created by Flash (see page 174).

- This is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.
- The service is provided only in Japanese.

#### Before contract



#### After contract



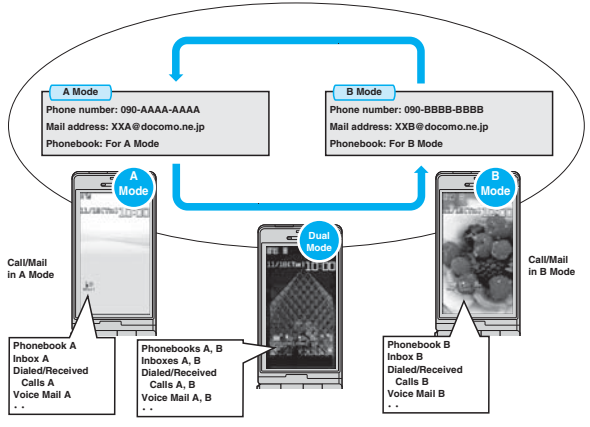
### ◆Chaku-moji ▶▶ P.57

While calling up the other party, you can have your message displayed on his/her Call Receiving display. The receiving end can know your subject/feeling by reading the message before answering the call.

## ◆2in1 ▶▶ P.456

This service enables you to have two numbers/two mail addresses on your single FOMA phone and to use your FOMA phone as if you were using two sets, by using the dedicated mode function. You can sort Phonebook entries, mail boxes, dialed/received call records, and Stand-by displays into "A mode" and "B mode" to manage them separately. You can also use "Dual mode" to simultaneously manage both A and B modes.

- This is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.



## ◆MUSIC Player ▶▶ P.392

On a single player, you can play back and enjoy Chaku-uta Full® music files, Windows Media® Audio (WMA) files, and SD-Audio files.

You can download Chaku-uta Full® music files from sites and may be able to display their images and lyrics while playing them back.




In the case of SD-Audio or WMA files, you can obtain your favorite music files from music CDs or Internet web pages and save them on the microSD card by using your personal computer.

You can save music files also by using the Napster® application program.









## Safety Precautions Always follow the safety precautions.

- Before using the FOMA phone, read these safety precautions carefully so that you can use it correctly.  
After reading the precautions, keep them in a safe place.
- Be sure to observe these safety precautions because they are designed to protect you or those around you from causing injury and to avoid unnecessary damage to the property.
- The symbols below indicate the levels of danger or damage that can be caused if the particular precautions are not observed.

	<b>Danger</b>	This symbol indicates that incorrect handling will almost certainly cause death or serious injury.
	<b>Warning</b>	This symbol indicates that incorrect handling poses a risk of causing death or serious injury.
	<b>Caution</b>	This symbol indicates that incorrect handling poses a risk of causing injury or damage to the product or property.

- The following symbols show specific directions:

	Denotes things not to do. (Prohibition)
Don't	
	Denotes not to disassemble.
Do not disassemble	
	Denotes not to touch with wet hands.
Not wet hands	
	Denotes not to use where it could get wet or not to wet it.
Avoid Water	
	Denotes mandatory instructions (matters that must be complied with).
Do	
	Denotes to pull the power plug out of the outlet.
Pull the power plug out	

- "Safety Precautions" are divided into the following six sections:

General precautions for FOMA phone, batteries, adapters/chargers, and UIM .....	P.13
Precautions for FOMA phone .....	P.14
Precautions for batteries .....	P.16
Precautions for adapters/chargers.....	P.17
Precautions for UIM.....	P.18
Notes on using near electronic medical equipment .....	P.18

## General precautions for FOMA phone, batteries, adapters/chargers, and UIM



### Danger



Don't

**Do not use, store or leave the FOMA phone and its accessories in places with a high temperature such as near fire or places exposed to direct sunlight, or in cars under the blazing sun.**

The devices could be deformed or malfunction, or the battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire, thus resulting in the deterioration of performance and shortening of the life of devices. Also, part of the case could get heated, causing bare skin burns.



Do not disassemble

**Do not disassemble, modify or solder the FOMA phone or accessories.**

Accidents such as fire, injury, or electric shock, or malfunction may result. The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Avoid Water

**Do not wet the FOMA phone or accessories.**

If liquids such as water or pet urine get onto them, overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury or others may result. Pay attention to the place of use and the way of handling.



Do

**Use only the batteries and adapters/chargers approved by DoCoMo for your FOMA phone.**

If you use any type of battery, adapter or charger other than the specified one, your FOMA phone, battery or other accessories may leak, overheat, burst, catch fire or malfunction.

Battery Pack P16

FOMA AC Adapter 01/02

FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use

FOMA DC Adapter 01/02

Desktop Holder P27

FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01

FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01

FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02

※For other compatible products, contact a handling counter such as a DoCoMo shop.



### Warning



Don't

**Do not place the batteries, the FOMA phone, adapters/chargers, or UIM in cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or high-pressure containers.**

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. The FOMA phone or the adapter/charger may overheat, smoke, or catch fire, or its circuit parts may become damaged.



Don't

**Do not throw the FOMA phone or accessories, or subject them to severe shocks.**

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. Also, malfunction or fire may result.



Don't

**Be careful not to let electroconductive materials (metal pieces, pencil leads etc.) contact with the charging terminal or connector terminal. Also, make sure that those are not entered into the inside of the FOMA phone.**

Short-circuit could cause fire or malfunction of the FOMA phone.



Do

**When you are in a place such as a gas station where flammable gas is generated, turn off the FOMA phone, and never do charging. Otherwise, catching fire may result.**

Ensure that you use Osaifu-Keitai with the FOMA phone turned off when you are in the vicinity of the gas station. (When IC Card Lock is set, turn off the power with the lock released.)



Do

**If odor, overheat, discoloration, or deformation is detected during use, battery charge, or storage, immediately observe the following:**

- 1. Pull the power plug out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.**
- 2. Turn off the power to the FOMA phone.**
- 3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA phone.**

If you use the FOMA phone and its accessories as they are, overheat, burst, or catching fire could result or the battery could leak.



## Caution



Don't

**Do not place the FOMA phone or accessories on unstable locations such as wobbly tables or slanted locations.**

The FOMA phone or accessories may fall, resulting in injury or malfunction.



Don't

**Do not store in humid or dusty places, or in high temperature environments.**

Malfunction may result.



Do

**If children use the FOMA phone or accessories, a guardian should explain the safety precautions and correct operations. The guardian should also make sure that the instructions are followed during use.**

Otherwise, injury may result.



Do

**Keep out of the reach of babies and infants.**

Accidental swallowing or injury may result.



Do

**Be especially careful when you use the FOMA phone for a long time with the adapter/charger connected.**

If you use i-oppli programs, talk on the videophone, watch 1Seg programs and so on for a long time during charging, the temperature of the FOMA phone, battery pack, or adapter/charger might rise.

If you directly touch the part of high temperature continuously, redness, itching, rash, or low-temperature bare skin burns may result depending on your physical conditions or predisposition.

## Precautions for FOMA phone



### Warning



Don't

**Do not directly point the infrared data port at someone's eyes during transmission.**

His/her eyes may possibly be affected. Other infrared devices may operate erroneously if the infrared data port is pointed at them during transmission.



Don't

**Do not put the FOMA phone in the place where it could be affected by an expanded airbag, e.g., on the dashboard.**

If the airbag expands, the FOMA phone could hit you and others, causing accidents such as injury and the FOMA phone could malfunction and become damaged.



Don't

**If you have any implanted electronic medical equipment, do not place your FOMA phone in a chest pocket or inner pocket.**

If the FOMA phone is positioned close to electronic medical equipment, it may cause that equipment to malfunction.



Don't

**Do not allow liquids such as water, or foreign materials such as metal pieces or flammable materials to get into the UIM or microSD card slot of the FOMA phone.**

Fire, electric shock or malfunction may result.



Do

**Turn off the FOMA phone in places where use is prohibited such as in airplanes and hospitals.**

Otherwise, electronic devices and electronic medical appliances may be adversely affected. If the Auto Power ON function is set, deactivate the setting, then turn the power off. For use inside medical facilities, make sure that you comply with their regulations. You may be punished for using the FOMA phone in airplanes, which is prohibited by law.



Do

**When talking with the FOMA phone set to Hands-free, be sure to keep the FOMA phone away from your ear.**

**Further, when you play games or play back music with the earphone/microphone connected, adjust the sound volume to moderate volume.**

The excessive sound volume impairs your hearing. Further, accidents may result due to the hardness of hearing of surrounding sound.



Do

**For those with weak heart conditions, the vibrator and ring volume must be adjusted carefully.**

Those functions may cause an effect on the heart.



Do

**If thunder starts to rumble while you are using the FOMA phone outdoors, turn off the power and move to a safe place.**

Otherwise, you could be struck by lightning or suffer an electric shock.





Do

**Turn off the FOMA phone when near electronic devices using high-precision control or weak signals.**

The FOMA phone may possibly cause these devices to malfunction.

※Electronic devices that may be affected:

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical electronic devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled devices. If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted defibrillator or any other electronic medical device, consult the manufacturer or retailer of the device for advice regarding possible effects from the radio waves.



Do

**If the display part or camera lens is broken, be careful about broken glasses or the exposed interior of the FOMA phone.**

Plastic panels are used for the surfaces of the display part and camera lens so that glasses do not easily get scattered, however, pay attention not to erroneously touch the broken part or interior. Otherwise, injury may result.



## Caution



Don't

**Do not swing the FOMA phone by its strap.**

The FOMA phone may hit you or persons around you, and accidents such as injury or malfunction and damage may result.



Don't

**When using the motion tracking, ensure that you check around you for safety, securely take hold of your FOMA phone, and do not swing to an extent more than necessitated.**

The motion tracking is the function to incline or swing the FOMA phone for operation. If you excessively swing your FOMA phone, it might happen that it hits against persons or objects, resulting in critical accidents or damage.



Don't

**When a metallic strap is attached to your FOMA phone, be careful that it does not hit against persons or objects when using the motion tracking.**

Accidents such as injury or malfunction and damage may result.



Don't

**Do not place magnetic cards or similar objects near the FOMA phone or between phone parts.**

Magnetic data on cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks, etc. may be deleted.



Don't

**Do not bring magnetic substances close to your FOMA phone.**

Strong magnetic items might cause an erroneous operation.



Don't

**If you erroneously break the display part and then crystal liquid gets leaked, never take or suck the liquid to or into your mouth, or apply to skin. If the crystal liquid gets into the eyes or mouth, immediately rinse it out with clean water and then seek medical attention. When it adheres to your skin or clothes, immediately wipe it away with alcohol etc., and then rinse it out with water and soap.**

Otherwise, the loss of eyesight or injury to your skin may result.



Don't

**Do not bring your ears close to the speakers while a ring tone sounds or a melody is played back from the FOMA phone.**

Otherwise, your hearing could be impaired.



Don't

**Do not open the FOMA phone by pressing the one-push open button near persons around you or your face.**

The FOMA phone may hit you or persons around you, causing accidents and injuries.



Don't

**Do not use the FOMA phone with the hook for Horizontal Open Style protruded.**

Otherwise, injury may result.



Do

**Electronic devices in some types of cars can be affected by use of the FOMA phone.**

For safety's sake, make sure not to use the FOMA phone inside such cars.



Do

Itching, rash or eczema may be caused depending on your physical conditions or predisposition. If an abnormality occurs, stop using the FOMA phone immediately, and then seek medical attention.

Metals are used for the following parts:

Where it is used	Material	Finishing
Charging terminal	Phosphor bronze	Gold-plated finish with nickel-plated ground
Hook for Horizontal Open Style	Stainless steel	Chrome-plated finish with nickel-plated ground
Metal part of command Navigation key	Polycarbonate	Steam pressed aluminum, Hard coat
Metal part of the one-push open button	Aluminum	Alumite coating



Do

Be careful not to get your finger or a strap caught between the FOMA phone when you close or open it.

Accidents such as injury or damage may result.



Do

When you watch a 1Seg program, watch in a place bright enough taking a certain distance from the display.

Otherwise, your visual acuity could be reduced.

## Precautions for batteries

Check the description on the label of the battery pack for the type of battery.

Description	Type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion battery



## Danger



Don't

Do not let any metal object such as a wire come in contact with the battery terminals. Also do not carry or store the battery together with any metal objects like a necklace.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Don't

Do not use excessive force to attach the battery to the FOMA phone even when you cannot attach it successfully. Also, check that the battery is the right way round when you attach it.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Don't

Do not throw the battery into fire. The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Don't

Do not pierce it with nails, hit it with a hammer, or step on it.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Do

If the battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Flush your eyes with clean water and seek medical attention immediately.

Otherwise, the loss of eyesight may result.



## Warning



Don't

When any abnormality due to external shock such as the deformation or scratches by dropping is found on the battery pack, immediately stop using it.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. Also, malfunction or fire may result.



Do

If charging is not completed at the end of the specified charging time, stop charging.

Otherwise, the battery may leak, overheat, become damaged or catch fire.



Do

Immediately stop using the FOMA phone and keep it away from fire if the battery leaks or emits an odor.

The leaked battery fluid may ignite, causing fire or burst.



Do

Be careful that your pets do not bite into the battery pack.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. Also, malfunction or fire may result.



## Caution



Don't

**An exhausted battery should not be disposed of with other waste.**

The battery may catch fire or damage the environment. After insulating the battery terminals with tape, take the unneeded battery to a handling counter such as a DoCoMo shop or dispose of it in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.



Don't

**Do not charge the wet battery.**

The battery pack may overheat, catch fire, or burst.



Do

**If the battery fluid comes in contact with skin or clothes, immediately stop using, then rinse it out thoroughly with clean water.**

Skin injury may result.

## Precautions for adapters/chargers



## Warning



Don't

**Do not use a damaged adapter/charger cord or power cord.**

Electric shock, overheating or fire may result.



Don't

**Do not use the AC adapter and desktop holder in steamy places such as a bathroom.**

Electric shock may occur.



Don't

**The DC adapter is for use only in a negative (-) grounded vehicle. Do not use it in a positive (+) grounded vehicle.**

Fire may result.



Don't

**If it starts to thunder, do not touch the FOMA phone and adapter/charger.**

You might be struck by lightning or suffer an electric shock.



Don't

**Never short-circuit the charging terminal when the adapter is plugged into the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Also, never touch the charging terminal with fingers or other bare skin.**

Fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury may result.



Don't

**Place the charger and desktop holder on a stable location during charging. Do not cover or wrap the charger and desktop holder in cloth or bedding.**

The FOMA phone may drop off, or the charger and desktop holder may overheat, causing fire or malfunction.



Don't

**Do not place something heavy on the adapter/charger cord and power cord.**

Electric shock or fire may result.



Not wet hands

**Do not touch the power cord of the adapter/charger, or power outlet with wet hands.**

Electric shock may result.



Do

**Use the adapter/charger at the specified V AC.**

If you use it at a wrong voltage, fire or malfunction may result. When using the FOMA phone overseas, use FOMA AC adapter available overseas.  
AC adapter: 100 V AC  
DC adapter: 12/24 V DC  
[For negative (-) grounded vehicles only]  
AC adapter available overseas: 100 V to 240 V AC  
[Connect only to household AC outlet]



Do

**If a fuse of the DC adapter has blown, replace it with a specified fuse.**

If you use an unspecified fuse, fire or malfunction may result. For the specified fuse, refer to each instruction manual.



Do

**Keep the power plugs dust-free.**

Otherwise, fire may result.



Do

**When pulling the AC adapter into the power outlet, firmly plug it in, taking care not to contact with metal straps or the like.**

Otherwise, electric shock, short-circuit or fire may result.



Do

When removing the adapter/charger out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket, do not forcibly pull the adapter/charger cord or power cord, instead take hold of the power plug and then pull.

If you pull the plug out by the cord, the cord may be damaged, which could result in electric shock or fire.



Pull the power plug out

When the adapter/charger is not to be used for a long period of time, unplug the power cord from the outlet.

Otherwise, electric shock, fire, or malfunction may result.



Pull the power plug out

If liquids such as water get in the charger, unplug the power cord immediately from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Otherwise, electric shock, smoke or fire may result.



Pull the power plug out

Before cleaning, pull the power plug out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Otherwise, electric shock may result.

## Precautions for UIM



### Caution



Do

Be careful not to touch the cut surface of the UIM (IC portion) when removing it.

You may hurt your hand or fingers.

## Notes on using near electronic medical equipment

■ The description below meets “Guidelines on the Use of Radio-communication Equipment such as Cellular Telephones – Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment” by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan.



### Warning



Do

Comply with the following in hospitals or health care facilities:

- Do not carry the FOMA phone into operating rooms, intensive care units (ICU) or coronary care units (CCU).
- Turn off the FOMA phone in hospital wards.
- If there is any electronic medical equipment near you, turn off the FOMA phone even when in a location such as a lobby.
- Comply with any regulations of hospital and health care facilities instructing you not to use or carry in a mobile phone.
- If the Auto Power ON function is set, deactivate the setting, then turn the power off.



Do

Turn off the FOMA phone in crowded areas such as inside trains during rush hour, as someone with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be near you.

Operation of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator can be affected by radio waves.



Do

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, use the mobile phone 22 cm or more away from an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.

Operation of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator can be affected by radio waves.



Do

Patients using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators (outside medical establishments for treatment at home, etc.) should check the influence of radio waves upon the equipment by consulting its manufacturer.

Operation of electronic medical equipment can be affected by radio waves.

## Notes on Handling

### General notes

■ Do not wet the equipment.

The FOMA phone, battery, adapter/charger, and UIM are not waterproofed. Do not use them in environments, which are high in humidity such as in bathrooms, and do not allow them to get wet from rain. Furthermore, if carrying them against your body, they become moist due to perspiration and the internal parts may become corroded, causing malfunction. If the parts are found to have been damaged due to exposure to the liquids, any repairs will not be covered by warranty, or repairs may not be possible. This may be repaired at a cost if repairs are possible.

■ **Use a dry soft cloth such as the one for cleaning glasses to clean the equipment.**

- The screen of the FOMA phone sometimes has a special coating so that they are easier to see. If you rub it roughly with a dry cloth, it might be scratched. Take care of the way of handling, and use only a dry, soft cloth such as the one for cleaning glasses. If the screen is left with water drop or stain adhered, smear may be generated or the coating might peel off.
- Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene, detergent or other solvents for cleaning, otherwise the printing may be removed or discoloration may result.

■ **Occasionally clean the terminals of the equipment using a dry cotton swab.**

If the terminals become soiled, the connection might deteriorate so that the power turns off or the battery does not charge fully. Wipe the terminals with a dry cloth or cotton swab.

■ **Do not place the FOMA phone near an air conditioner outlets.**

Condensation may form due to rapid changes in temperature, and this may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction.

■ **Do not apply excessive force onto the FOMA phone and battery pack.**

If you put the FOMA phone in a bag along with many other articles or sit with the FOMA phone in a clothes pocket, the display, internal circuitry and the battery pack could be damaged or malfunction. Also, if your FOMA phone is left with an external device connected to the connector terminal or Earphone/Microphone/AV output terminal, the connector could be damaged, or malfunction.

■ **Carefully read each instruction manual attached to the FOMA phone, adapter/charger, or desktop holder.**

■ **Do not rub or scratch the display part with metals.**

Doing so might cause damage to the part, resulting in trouble or malfunction.

## Notes on handling the FOMA phone

■ **Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.**

The FOMA phone should be used within a temperature range of 5°C to 35°C and a humidity range of 45% to 85%.

■ **The FOMA phone, if operated near landline phones, television sets, radios or other devices that are in use, may affect them. You should operate your FOMA phone as far away from such equipment as possible.**

■ **It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information stored in the FOMA phone and keep such notes in a safe place.**

We take no responsibility for any loss of the stored data items.

■ **Do not insert an external device to the connector terminal or Earphone/Microphone/AV output terminal at a slant when connecting, and do not pull it out when it is inserted.**

Malfunction or damage may result.

■ **Make sure that nothing, such as a strap, gets caught between the parts of the FOMA phone when you close it.**

Otherwise, malfunction or damage may result.

■ **The FOMA phone becomes warm during use or charging but this is not an abnormality. Use the FOMA phone as it is.**

■ **Do not leave the camera in places exposed to direct sunlight.**

Pixels may be discolored or burns may result.

■ **Usually, use the FOMA phone with the cover of the Earphone/Microphone/AV output terminal, connector terminal, and that of microSD card slot mounted.**

Dust or water might enter into the FOMA phone, causing malfunction.

■ **Do not use the FOMA phone with the back cover left removed.**

The battery pack might come out, or malfunction or damage may result.

■ **Do not apply an excessively thick sticker onto the surfaces of the display, keys, or buttons.**  
Malfunction may result.

■ **While you are using the microSD card, never take it off or turn off the power to the FOMA phone.**

Data may be erased or malfunction may result.

## Notes on handling batteries

■ **Batteries have a limited life.**

Though it varies depending on the usage state, you are advised to replace the battery if its usable time is extremely short even when you fully charge it. Make sure that you buy the specified battery.

■ **Charge the battery in a place with an appropriate ambient temperature of 5°C to 35°C.**

■ **Make sure that the battery is charged when you use the FOMA phone for the first time or have not used it for a long period of time.**

■ **The usable time of the battery differs depending on the usage environment or its remaining life.**

■ **Depending on how the battery pack is used, it might swell as its operating life becomes short, but this is not a problem.**

■ **Do not store or leave the empty battery pack.**  
The performance and operating life of the battery pack might be lowered or shortened.

## Notes on handling chargers/adapters

- Charge the battery in a place with an appropriate ambient temperature of 5°C to 35°C.
- Charge the battery where:
  - There is very little humidity, vibration, and dust.
  - There are no landline phones, television sets or radios nearby.
- During charging, the adapter/charger may become warm. This is not an abnormality, so continue charging.
- Do not use the DC adapter for charging the battery when the car engine is not running. The car battery could go flat.
- When using the power outlet having the disengaging prevention mechanism, observe the instructions given in that instruction manual.
- Do not give a strong shock. Also, do not deform the charging terminal. Malfunction may result.

## Notes on handling the UIM

- Never use more force than necessary when inserting/removing the UIM.
- The UIM may become warm during use, but this is not a sign of a malfunction. Continue using it as it is.
- The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the UIM into some other types of IC card reader/writer.
- Always keep the IC portion clean.
- Use a dry soft cloth such as the one for cleaning glasses to clean the equipment.

- It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information stored on the UIM and keep such notes in a safe place.

We take no responsibility for any loss of the stored data items.

- For the environmental protection, bring any unneeded UIMs to a handling counter such as a DoCoMo shop.
- Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.
- Do not damage, carelessly touch, or short-circuit the IC. Malfunction may result.
- Do not drop the UIM or subject it to strong impacts. Malfunction may result.
- Do not bend the UIM or place something heavy on it. Malfunction may result.
- Into the FOMA phone, do not insert the UIM with a label or sticker pasted. Malfunction may result.

## Notes on using Bluetooth function

- FOMA phone supports the security function that meets the Bluetooth Specification for the security during connection using the Bluetooth function. However, the security may not be sufficient depending on the configuration. Take care of the security while making connection using the Bluetooth function.

- Note that even if any leak of data or information occurs while making connection using the Bluetooth function, we take no responsibility.

- With the FOMA phone, you can use the following: Headset, Hands-Free, Audio, Dial-up Communication, Object Push, and Serial Port. With Audio, you might be able to use Audio Video Remote Control. (Only with the compatible Bluetooth devices)

### Supported version

Bluetooth Specification Ver. 2.0+EDR compliant\*\*1

### Supported profiles\*\*2 (Supported services)

#### HSP

Headset Profile

#### HFP

Hands-Free Profile

#### A2DP

Advanced Audio Distribution Profile

#### AVRCP

Audio/Video Remote Control Profile

#### DUNP

Dial-up Networking Profile

#### OPP

Object Push Profile

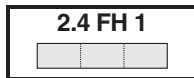
#### SPP


Serial Port Profile

- ※1 The FOMA phone and all Bluetooth function-installed devices have ensured that they conform to the Bluetooth Specification according to the rules the Bluetooth SIG defines, and are all authenticated. However, operating methods might differ, or data might not be exchanged even when they are connected wirelessly, depending on the features or specifications of connecting devices.
- ※2 Standardizes the connecting procedures of Bluetooth function per feature of a device.

### Radio frequencies

The radio frequencies the Bluetooth function of the FOMA phone uses are as follows:



- 2.4 : Indicates radio facilities that use 2400 MHz frequencies.
- FH : Indicates the modulation system is the FH-SS system.
- 1 : Indicates that a supposed coverage distance is 10 meters or less.
-  : Indicates that all radio frequencies 2400 MHz through 2483.5 MHz are used, and that the frequencies for mobile object identifiers shall not be avoided.

**Cautions on Using Bluetooth Devices**  
Bluetooth operates at radio frequencies assigned to the in-house radio stations for mobile object identifiers that have to be licensed and are used in production lines of a factory, specific unlicensed low power radio stations, and amateur radio stations (hereafter, referred to "another radio station") in addition to scientific, medical, or industrial devices such as microwave ovens.

1. Before using this product, make sure that "another radio station" is not operating nearby.
2. If radio interference between this product and "another radio station" occurs, move immediately to another place or stop radio transmission to avoid interference.
3. For further details, contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back page of this manual.

### Notes on handling the FeliCa reader/writer

- The FeliCa reader/writer function on the FOMA phone uses very weak radio waves which do not require to be licensed as radio stations.
- The FeliCa reader/writer is operated on the 13.56 MHz frequencies. When you use another reader/writer nearby, take enough distance between your FOMA phone and the reader/writer. Further, ensure that there are no radio stations that use the same frequencies.

### Caution

- Do not use the modified FOMA phone. Using a modified FOMA phone infringes the Radio Law.  
The FOMA phones are granted technical regulations conformity certification as the specified radio equipment under the Radio Law and bear a "technical conformity mark" on the nameplate as evidence of conformity. Unscrewing the FOMA phone and modifying internal components void the technical regulations conformity certification. Do not use the FOMA phone in this state, which infringes the Radio Law.
- Be especially careful not to operate the FOMA phone while driving.  
You will be imposed punishment if you use the mobile phone in your hand while driving. If you answer a call out of necessity, tell the caller with Hands-free that you will call him/her back, park your car to somewhere safe, and then dial.
- Use the Bluetooth functions in Japan only.  
The Bluetooth functions on the FOMA phone have been authorized in compliance with the radio transmission standards in Japan.  
You might be imposed punishment if you use them overseas.
- Use the FeliCa reader/writer functions in Japan only.  
The FeliCa reader/writer functions on the FOMA phone have been authorized in compliance with the radio transmission standards in Japan.  
You might be imposed punishment if you use them overseas.

## Intellectual Property Rights

### Copyrights and Portrait Rights

You have no right to copy, modify, or distribute the contents such as text, images, music, or software programs downloaded from web pages on the Internet, or images shot by the cameras of this product without permission from the copyright holder except for when the copy or quote is for personal use that is allowed by the copyright law.

Note that it may be prohibited to shoot or record live performances or exhibitions even for personal use. Make sure that you refrain from shooting portraits of other persons and distributing such portraits over the Internet without consent, as this violates portrait rights.

### Trademarks

- FOMA, "mova", "PushTalk", "PushTalkPlus", "i-mode", "i-appli", "i-appliDX", "i-motion", "Deco-mail", "Chaku-motion", "Chara-den", "ToruCa", "mopera", "mopera U", "WORLD CALL", "Dual Network", "FirstPass", "visualnet", "V-live", "i-Channel", "DCMX", "iD", "Security Scan", "i-motion mail", "i-area", "Short Mail", "WORLD WING", "Public mode", "DoPa", "sigmarion", "musea", "IMCS", "OFFICEED", "2in1", "Chokkan Game", and the logos of "FOMA", "i-mode", "i-appli", "DCMX", "iC", "iD", "Music&Video Channel", and "HIGH-SPEED" are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- "Catch Phone (Call waiting service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- McAfee® is registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Inc., in the US and other countries.
- NAVIDIAL and NAVIDIAL logo mark are trademarks of NTT Communications Corporation.
- Microsoft®, Windows®, and Windows Vista® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- Windows Media® is either a registered trademark or trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.



- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2008 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
- JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
-  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- The microSD logo is a trademark.



- The microSDHC logo is a trademark.
- "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.

- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- 使いかたナビ® is a registered trademark of CANNAC, Inc.
- "VIERA" is a registered trademark of Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., Ltd.
- Java and Java related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by NTT DoCoMo, Inc. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™  
Mascot Capsule® is a trademark of HI CORPORATION.
- OKAO Vision is used for multiple face detection to improve camera AF.  
OKAO is a registered trademark or trademark of OMRON Corporation in JAPAN and other countries.
- The image stabilization technology utilized is PhotoSolid®, a product of Morpho, Inc. PhotoSolid® is the registered trademark of Morpho, Inc. in Japan and other countries.
- Napster is a registered trademark of Napster, LLC. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- Other company names and product names described in the text are trademarks or registered trademarks of those companies.

### Others

- This product contains NetFront Sync Client of ACCESS CO., LTD. Copyright © 2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved. ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- IrFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.  
The IrDA Feature Trademark is owned by the Infrared Data Association and used under license therefrom.

**NetFront**



- Contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ and Adobe® Reader® LE technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated  
Adobe Flash Lite Copyright © 2003-2007 Adobe System Incorporated. All rights reserved.



Adobe Reader LE Copyright © 1993-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.

Adobe, Adobe Reader, Flash, and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.

- FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390	5,535,239	5,267,262	5,600,754
5,416,797	5,490,165	5,101,501	5,511,073	5,267,261	5,568,483
5,414,796	5,659,569	5,056,109	5,506,865	5,228,054	5,544,196
5,337,338	5,657,420	5,710,784	5,778,338		

- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

For more details, see "readme.txt" in the "GPL · LGPL等について" folder on the bundled CD-ROM. ("readme.txt" is only available in Japanese version.)

- Advanced Wnn V2 of OMRON SOFTWARE Co., Ltd. is used for conversion methods for Japanese language.

"Advanced Wnn V2" © OMRON SOFTWARE Co., LTD. 1999-2008 All Right Reserved.

- This product is loaded with Bluetooth™ Stack for Embedded Systems Spec 2.0 by Toshiba Corp.

- This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 patent portfolio license, AVC patent portfolio license and VC-1 patent portfolio license for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to

- encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Visual Standard, AVC Standard and VC-1 Standard ("MPEG-4/AVC/VC-1 Video") and/or
- decode MPEG-4/AVC/VC-1 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider licensed to provide MPEG-4/AVC/VC-1 Video.

No license is granted or implied for any other use.

Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C.

See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

- Copyright 2001 Seiko Epson Corporation.

All Rights Reserved. PRINT Image Matching is a trademark of Seiko Epson Corporation.

The PRINT Image Matching logo is a trademark of Seiko Epson Corporation.

- This product is manufactured or sold under license from InterDigital Technology Corporation.



- This product uses GestureTek's technology.

Copyright © 2008, GestureTek, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

- The abbreviations used for respective operating systems (Japanese version) in this manual are as shown below:

Windows Vista is the abbreviation of Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, and Ultimate).

Windows XP is the abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.

Windows 2000 is the abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.

- This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation and third parties. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary and third parties.

- This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary.

- Content providers are using the digital rights management technology for Windows Media contained in this device ("WM-DRM") to protect the integrity of their content ("Secure Content") so that their intellectual property, including copyright, in such content is not misappropriated. This device uses WM-DRM Software to play Secure Content ("WM-DRM Software"). If the security of the WM-DRM Software in this device has been compromised, owners of Secure Content ("Secure Content Owners") may request that Microsoft revoke the WM-DRM Software's right to acquire new licenses to copy, display and/or play Secure Content. Revocation does not alter the WM-DRM Software's ability to play unprotected content. A list of Revoked WM-DRM Software is sent to your device whenever you download a license for Secure Content from the Internet or from a PC. Microsoft may, in conjunction with such license, also download revocation lists onto your device on behalf of Secure Content Owners.

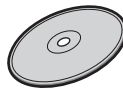
## Accessories and Main Options

### <Accessories>

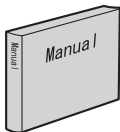
- FOMA P906i Handset  
(With Warranty and Back Cover P26)



- FOMA P906i CD-ROM  
The PDF versions of "Manual for PC Connection" and "Kuten Code List" are included.



- Instruction Manual  
Quick Manual included (See page 550)

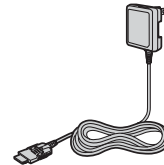


- Battery Pack P16

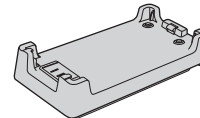


### <Main Options>

- FOMA AC Adapter 01/02  
(With Warranty and Instruction Manual)



- Desktop Holder P27  
(With Instruction Manual)

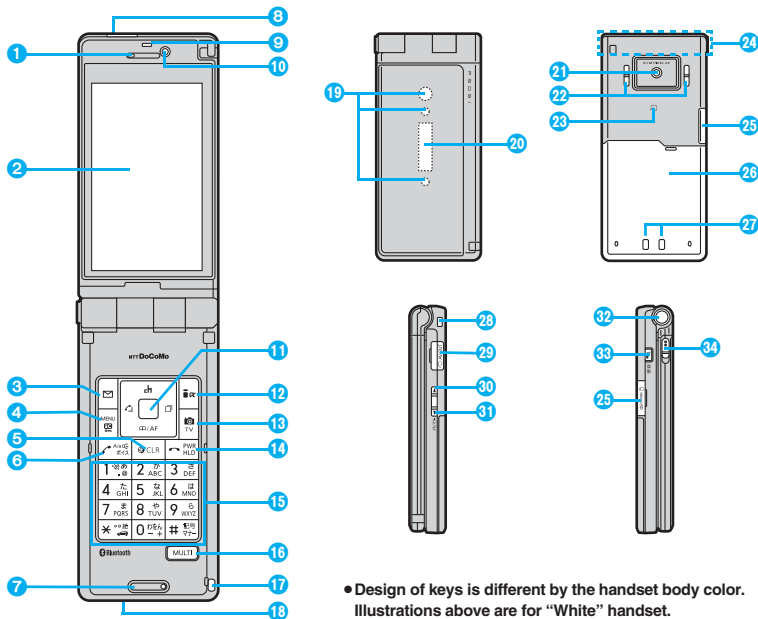


Other Options → See page 514

# Before Using the Handset

Phone Parts and Functions .....	26
Styles .....	28
Navigation Displays and Key Operations .....	29
Display .....	30
Displaying Description of Icons .....	<Icons> 32
Private Window .....	32
Method for Selecting Menu .....	33
Using Simple Menu .....	38
When You do not Remember Key Operation .....	<Guide> 39
Using UIM (FOMA Card) .....	39
Attaching/Removing Batteries .....	41
Charging .....	42
Checking Battery Level .....	<Battery Level> 44
Turning Power On/Off .....	<Power ON/OFF> 45
Switching to English .....	<Select Language> 45
Executing Initial Settings .....	<Initial Setting> 46
Setting Date and Time .....	<Set Time> 46
Displaying World Time .....	<World Time Watch> 47
Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number .....	<Caller ID Notification> 47
Checking Your Own Number .....	<Own Number> 48

# Phone Parts and Functions



• Design of keys is different by the handset body color.  
Illustrations above are for "White" handset.

## ■ For inserting or pulling the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option)

Take hold of the plug and insert or pull it straight into or out. Be careful not to take hold of the cover and plug together when you pull it out.



### 1 Earpiece

- For listening to the other party's voice

### 2 Display

- (See page 30)

### 3 Mail key

- For showing the Mail menu (See page 220)
- For operating the function corresponding to the navigation displays (See page 29)
- **<Press and hold for at least one second>**
- For checking new mail messages (See page 215)

### 4 Menu key/IC Card Lock key

- For showing Main Menu (See page 33)
- For showing horizontal open menu (See page 36)
- For operating the function corresponding to the navigation displays (See page 29)
- **<Press and hold for at least one second>**
- For locking the IC card (See page 275)

### 5 CLR Clear key

- For returning to the previous operation
- For clearing entered text or a phone number
- **<Press and hold for at least one second>**
- For resetting Main Menu (See page 121)

### 6 Send/Answer key, Hands-free key

- For making/receiving calls (See page 50 and page 64)
- For talking with Hands-free (See page 63)
- **<Press and hold for at least one second>**
- For accessing a voice dial entry (See page 104)

### 7 Microphone

- For speaking to the other party

### 8 Infrared data port

- Used for infrared data exchange and the infrared remote-controller. (See page 367 and page 371)

### 9 Light sensor

- For sensing brightness (See page 118)

**10 Inside camera**

- For shooting photos of yourself (See page 148)
- For catching sight of yourself during a videophone call

**11 Command Navigation key**

- For operating functions and menus (See page 29)

**12 i-mode key/i-oppil key**

- For showing the i-mode menu (See page 172)
- For operating the function corresponding to the navigation displays (See page 29)

**<Press and hold for at least one second>**

- For showing the i-oppil Software list (See page 251)

**13 Camera key/1Seg key**

- For activating the camera in "Photo mode" (See page 155)
- For switching the camera mode while the camera is activated (See page 160)
- For operating the function corresponding to the navigation displays (See page 29)

**<Press and hold for at least one second>**

- For starting 1Seg (See page 295)

**14 Power/End key**

- For ending calls
- For ending respective functions
- For turning on the power (for at least one second)/
- For turning off the power (for at least two seconds) (See page 45)

**15 Numeric keys**

- For entering phone numbers and text
- **#** (for at least one second)
- For activating Manner Mode (See page 112)
- **X** (for at least one second)
- For activating Public Mode (Drive Mode) (See page 69)
- **1** (for at least one second)
- For measuring your current location and executing the GPS function (See page 278)
- **5** (for at least one second)
- For switching the backlight on/off (See page 118)
- **8** (for at least one second)
- For switching View Blind on/off (See page 119)

**16 Multi key**

- For showing the Multitask menu (See page 406)

**<Press and hold for at least one second>**

- For showing the display for setting "Switch 3G/GSM" (See page 477)
- For switching functions when multiple functions are running (See page 406)

**17 Hook for Horizontal Open Style****18 Connector terminal**

- For connecting the AC adapter (option), DC adapter (option), or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option)

**19 Call/Charging indicator**

- Flickers for incoming calls/mail and during a call. (See page 122)
- Lights in red during charging.
- Three lamps are mounted on the FOMA phone. They do not light/flicker for some functions.
- Flickers when you shoot with the camera.

**20 Private window**

- (See page 32)

**21 Outside camera**

- For shooting portraits and/or landscapes (See page 148)
- For catching sight of persons and/or landscapes during a videophone call

**22 Speakers**

- For sounding ring tones
- For listening to the other party's voice when Hands-free is activated (See page 63)

**23 FelICa mark**

- The IC card is mounted.
- Use the IC card function placing this mark over the scanning device. You cannot dismount the IC card. (See page 267)

**24 FOMA antenna/1Seg antenna**

- The antenna is embedded in the FOMA phone. Do not cover the antenna with your hand for better communication/receiving.

**25 microSD card slot**

- For inserting microSD card (See page 355)

**26 Back cover**

- Remove this when attaching/removing the battery pack and UIM. (See page 39 and page 41)
- Do not peel off the black sticker on the back of the back cover. If you peel it off, you might not be able to read and write the IC card.

**27 Charging terminal****28 Strap hole****29 Earphone/Microphone/AV output terminal**

- (See page 380 and page 423)

**30 Side ▲ key**

- For scrolling up page by page

**<Press and hold for at least one second with the FOMA phone opened>**

- For activating 2in1 (See page 456)

**31 Side ▼ key**

- For scrolling down page by page
- For using Record Message (See page 72)
- For checking for missed calls and new mail (See page 124)

**<Press and hold for at least one second with the FOMA phone closed>**

- For activating Manner Mode (See page 112)

**32 One-push open button**

- (See page 28)

**33 PushTalk key**

- For making/receiving PushTalk calls (See page 82 and page 84)
- For showing the PushTalk Phonebook (See page 85)
- <Press and hold for at least one second>**
- For activating MUSIC Player (See page 392)

**34 Horizontal open lever**

- (See page 28)

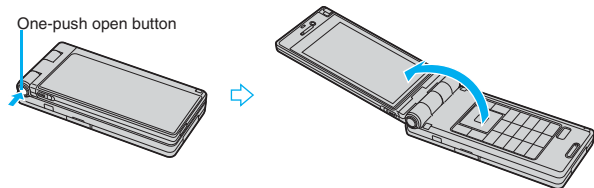
## Styles

The P906i comes with two styles.

### Normal Style

You can open the FOMA phone easily by one-push key operation. (One-push Open)

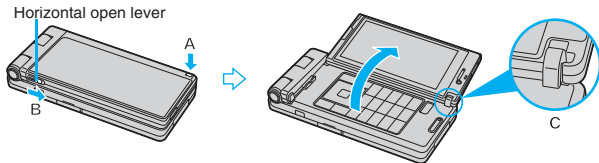
- You can open it also manually without using the button.
- You need to close the FOMA phone manually. If it does not close, open it fully and then close it.



### Horizontal Open Style

Hold down the part A and open the display part with the horizontal open lever slid into the direction B. You can watch 1Seg programs and use Full Browser in a horizontal display.

- If the FOMA phone is not in state of C when you open the display, re-open the FOMA phone after closing it once.



### Information

- When you open the FOMA phone by pressing the one-push open button, it might not open fully depending on its direction.
- When you open the FOMA phone by pressing the one-push open button, be careful not to drop it by its rebound.

### Information

- When you press the one-push open button in Horizontal Open Style, the FOMA phone will open in Normal Style after it is closed.
- Before switching the styles, be sure to completely close the FOMA phone. If you operate the horizontal open lever in Normal Style or with the display part unlatched, malfunction or damage may result.
- When the confirmation display to select "YES/NO" is shown and you switch the style, the confirmation display may be disappeared.

## Work with Style

You can set an operation for when you switch to Horizontal Open Style while displaying the Stand-by display.

1 [MENU] ▶ Settings ▶ Other settings ▶ Work with style  
▶ Select an item

Horizontal open menu . . . You can display Horizontal open menu. (See page 36)

1Seg . . . . . You can activate 1Seg. (See page 295)

OFF . . . . . You can display Standby disp. Wide. (See page 115)

### Information

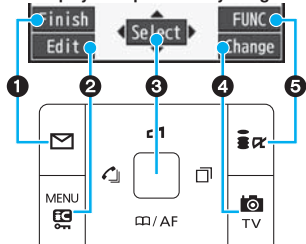
- When you switch to Horizontal Open Style while displaying Main Menu, the Standby disp. Wide appears regardless of the setting of this function.

# Navigation Displays and Key Operations

## Key Operations in Normal Style

When you want to execute the operation shown display, press the corresponding key as below.

### Basic display examples and key assignments



1	Indicates the operation you can perform with the  key.	Finish
2	Indicates the operation you can perform with the  key.	Edit Store
3	Indicates the operation you can perform with the  key.	Select Set
4	Indicates the direction in which you can scroll and select items with the  key.	◀ ▶
4	Indicates the operation you can perform with the  key.	Change Detail
5	Indicates the operation you can perform with the  key.	FUNC Set

### Operating Command Navigation key

#### Up

- Moves the cursor or highlighted display up. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
- Scrolls the display while a site or mail text is displayed.
- Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Channel list. (See page 195)
- Converts entered characters to katakana, kanji or other characters. (See page 437)

#### Left/Received Calls

- Moves the cursor to the left.
- Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Received Call list. Press and hold for at least one second to bring up the Received Address list. (See page 55 and page 229)
- Scrolls back page by page. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
- Returns to the previous page while displaying a site.

#### OK key

- Fixes the operation.

#### Right/Redial

- Moves the cursor to the right.
- Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Redial list. Press and hold for at least one second to bring up the Sent Address list. (See page 54 and page 229)
- Scrolls forward page by page. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
- Moves to the next page while displaying a site.

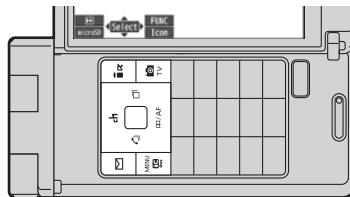
#### Down

- Moves the cursor or highlighted display down. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
- Scrolls the display while a site or mail text is displayed.
- Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Search Phonebook display. Press and hold for at least one second to store a Phonebook entry. (See page 92 and page 98)
- Converts entered characters to kanji, katakana or other characters. (See page 437)
- Adjusts the camera focus for shooting. (See page 160)

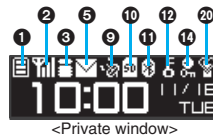
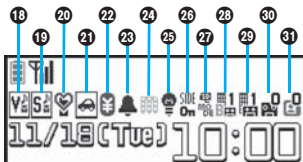
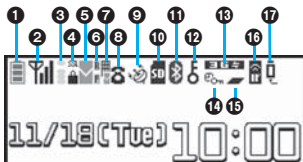
## Key Operations in Horizontal Open Style

You can operate the keys in the same way as in Normal Style while the vertical display is shown.

While the horizontal display is shown, press the corresponding key as below.



# Display











































1		Battery level (estimate) (See page 44)
2		Radio waves reception level (estimate)
		Strong ← → Weak
3		You are out of the FOMA service area or radio waves do not reach.
		During Self Mode (See page 135)
		During i-mode (See page 172)
4		During i-mode communication (See page 172)
		During packet communication (The icon differs depending on the communication status.)
		During PushTalk communication (See page 82)
5		You get out of the service area while Network Search Mode is set to "Manual". (See page 477)
		During SSL communication (See page 172)
6		Unread i-mode mail or an SMS message exists. (See page 213 and page 245)
		The area for i-mode mail and SMS messages in the FOMA phone is full. (See page 214 and page 245)
7		The area for SMS messages on the UIM (FOMA card) is full.
		Unread mail exists, and the area for SMS messages on the UIM (FOMA card) is full.
		Both the FOMA phone and UIM (FOMA card) are full.
		Area Mail exists. (See page 238)





6		Unread Messages R/F exist. (See page 235)
		The area for Messages R/F in the FOMA phone is full. (See page 236)
7		i-mode mail is held at the i-mode Center. (See page 215)
		The box for i-mode mail at the i-mode Center is full. (See page 214)
8		Messages R/F are held at the i-mode Center. (See page 236)
		The box for Messages R/F at the i-mode Center is full. (See page 236)
9		i-mode mail is held at the i-mode Center while Receive Option Setting is set to "ON". (See page 214)
		During a voice call
10		During a videophone call
		During 64K data communication
11		During measuring the current location (See page 278)
		Location Request Menu is set to "ON" or "Permission schedule", and it is within the validity period. (See page 288)
12		Location Request Menu is set to "Permission schedule" and it is out of the validity period. (See page 288)

13		A microSD card is inserted. (See page 356)
		Data is being read to/written from the microSD card.
14		A write-protected microSD card is inserted. (See page 356)
		The inserted microSD card cannot be used. (See page 356)
15		A microSD card is inserted, and the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option) is connected in microSD Mode. (See page 363)
		A microSD card is inserted, and the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option) is connected in MTP Mode. (See page 363)
16		A Bluetooth device is connected. (See page 427 and page 429)
		A Bluetooth device is connected and power consumption is low. (See page 427)
17		During Lock All (See page 134)
		During Personal Data Lock (See page 136)
18		During Keypad Dial Lock (See page 140)
		During Secret Mode or Secret Data Only (See page 141)



12	 On	During IC Card Lock (See page 275)
	 Dial Pad Lock	Both Keypad Dial Lock and Personal Data Lock are set.
	 Dial Pad Lock and Secret Mode	Both Keypad Dial Lock and Secret Mode/Secret Data Only are set.
	 IC Card Lock	Both IC Card Lock and Lock All are set.
	 IC Card Lock and Personal Data Lock	Both IC Card Lock and Personal Data Lock are set.
	 IC Card Lock and Keypad Dial Lock	Both IC Card Lock and Keypad Dial Lock are set.
	 IC Card Lock and Secret Mode/Secret Data Only	Both IC Card Lock and Secret Mode/Secret Data Only are set.
	 IC Card Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, and Personal Data Lock	IC Card Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, and Personal Data Lock are simultaneously set.
13	 3G+	Type of in-use network (See page 473)
	 3G	
	 GSM	
	 GPRS	
	 OFFICEED	You are in the OFFICEED area. (See page 462)
14	 Timer Lock ON At Close	Timer Lock ON At Close is set. (See page 137)
	 Multitask	During Multitask (See page 405)
15	 Multiple functions activated	Multiple functions are activated. (See page 405)
	 1Seg program	During watching a 1Seg program (See page 295)
	 1Seg recording	During recording a 1Seg program (See page 303)
	 1Seg recording by timer	During recording a 1Seg program by Timer Recording (See page 307)
	 1Seg pause	During pause of recording a 1Seg program (See page 303)
	 Music playback	During music playback (See page 393)
	 Music pause	During music pause (See page 393)

16	 Infrared data exchange	During infrared data exchange (See page 367 and page 371)
	 FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function	The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option) is connected in Communication Mode.
17	 FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function	The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option) is connected in microSD Mode. (See page 363)
	 USB Hands-free compatible device	During talk or communication through a USB Hands-free compatible device (See page 63)
	 USB Hands-free compatible device	A USB Hands-free compatible device is connected. (See page 63)
	 USB Hands-free compatible device	A USB Hands-free compatible device is connected in microSD Mode. (See page 63)
18	 Vibrator	Vibrator is set. (See page 110)
19	 Ring Volume	Ring Volume is set to "Silent" or Mail/Msg. Ring Time is set to "OFF". (See page 68 and page 111)
	 Manner Mode	During Manner Mode (See page 112)
20	 Remote Monitoring	Remote Monitoring is set to "ON". (See page 79)
21	 Public Mode	During Public Mode (Drive Mode) (See page 69)
22	 Call cost	The call cost has exceeded the specified limit. (See page 420)
23	 Alarm	An alarm is set. (See page 307 and page 409)
24	 Music&Video Channel program	A Music&Video Channel program is booked. (See page 384)
25	 Backlight	Backlight is set to "OFF". (See page 118)
26	 Side Keys Guard	Side Keys Guard is set to "ON". (See page 141)
27	 USB Mode Setting	USB Mode Setting is set to "microSD mode". (See page 363)
	 USB Mode Setting	USB Mode Setting is set to "MTP mode". (See page 363)

28	 Voice mail messages	Voice mail messages for Number B are held at the Voice Mail Center in Dual Mode of 2in1. (See page 461)
	 Voice mail messages	Voice mail messages are held at the Voice Mail Center. (See page 446)
29	 Voice mail messages	The number of record messages (See page 71)
30	 Voice mail messages	The number of videophone record messages (See page 71)

- For the horizontal display, icons appear at the lower right of the display.
- The clock at the upper right of the display (at the lower right of the horizontal display) does not appear when icon **16** or **17** is displayed.
- When the Stand-by display is shown, the notification icon or desktop icon appears. (See page 125)

### Information





- Some characters and symbols on the display and Private window might be modified or abbreviated. In addition, the Private window is displayed in monochrome.
- The color liquid crystal display uses high-precision production technology. The slightest change in the environment or other factors may result in unlit or permanently lit pixels, but this is not a manufacturing defect.
- The color display is shown in black and white in this manual, so the color tone of the actual display looks different.

&lt;Icons&gt;

MENU 3 6

## Displaying Description of Icons

The symbols on the display (such as , , and ) are called icons. You can check the meanings of them on the display.

1  Settings  Display  Icons  
 to highlight an icon.

## Private Window


Various information is displayed on the Private window like the following examples:


Press , , or  with the FOMA phone closed, etc. to display information for about 15 seconds.



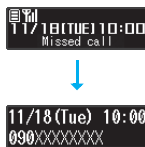
### When a missed call is found

When the FOMA phone is closed, "Missed call" appears.

Press  to display the missed call record. The name is displayed for the missed call coming from the party stored in the Phonebook.


When there are multiple missed calls, up to three missed call records are displayed each time you press .


- If you have received 30 or more incoming calls after a missed call, the missed call record disappears.
- Missed call records might not be displayed while another function is activated.
- After you display a missed call record, "Missed call" disappears.




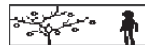
### When a new mail message or Message R/F is received

When the FOMA phone is closed, a Feel \* Mail image is played back, and then "New mail" appears.

When you press , the latest Feel \* Mail image is played back. (For Messages R/F, the Feel \* Mail image is not played back.)




When "Mail" on page 117 is set to "ON", the received date/time, sender's address (name), and subject of the mail or the received date/time and subject of the Message R/F are displayed. The sender's name is displayed for the mail coming from the party stored in the Phonebook. When multiple mail messages or Messages R/F are received, up to three mail messages or Messages R/F appear each time you press  with "New mail" displayed.

- Press  to end the playback of the Feel \* Mail image or to clear the received date/time, and others.
- For the mail messages and Messages R/F sorted to the box or folder with security set, the Feel \* Mail images, received date/time, and others are not played back/displayed.
- When a mail message or Message R/F comes in while "Receiving display" is set to "Operation preferred" and a display other than the Stand-by display is shown, "New mail" appears without showing any information.
- Depending on the setting of "Auto-display", "New mail" appears without showing any information when a Message R/F comes in.
- After you display the received date/time and others of the received mail or Message R/F, "New mail" disappears.
- When a mail message or Message R/F comes in during a voice call or a videophone call, information is not displayed even when "Receiving display" is set to "Alarm preferred".
- When you set "Secret mail display" to "OFF" and you receive a secret mail message in Normal Mode, a Feel \* Mail image is not played back.




### When i-Channel is received

When "i-Channel ticker" on page 117 is set to "ON" and the FOMA phone is closed, tickers flow on the Private window.


- Press , , or  to end the tickers' flow.


## Change Clock Display

You can change displayed contents by pressing  while clock is shown.



## Method for Selecting Menu

Press  of the FOMA phone to bring up Main Menu so that you can execute, set, or check respective functions.

- Some functions can be selected also by the operation other than pressing . In this manual, the operation by the easier way is described.
- You can also switch to Simple Menu focusing on only basic functions for easy operation. (See page 38)
- This FOMA phone supports Kisekai Tool (see page 121). If you use Kisekai Tool to change the design of the Menu display, some menu configurations change according to the usage frequency depending on the type of the menu. Further, some menu numbers that are assigned to the menu items do not apply. In that case, you cannot operate as described in this manual, so you are advised to switch to the basic structure menu (see page 121), or reset menu settings (see page 121).

When you set "Menu icon setting" by "P906" of Kisekai Tool, you can temporarily restore to the normal menu structure by selecting "基本メニュー呼び出し (Display basic menu)" from the main menu items. When you set "P906" of Kisekai Tool for Main Menu, the main menu items and sub-menu items are displayed in Japanese even if "Select language" is set to "English".

### ■ Scroll Selection

Main Menu is composed of 12 main menu icons indicating each function.

- If you select a main menu icon, the Sub-menu Item Selection display appears. If you further select a sub-menu item, the Lower Sub-menu Item Selection display appears.
- By repeating selecting, you can set and check the function.


### ■ Menu Number Selection

You can display some functions by pressing  + the menu number (see page 482).

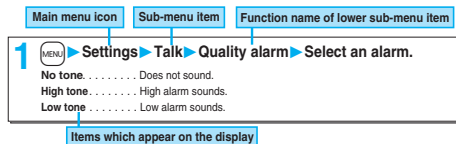
### ■ Multitask is Supported

- You can simultaneously use some functions in Main Menu. (See page 405)

## Scroll Selection

In this manual, the description of the command navigation key operation (selection of top/bottom/left/right, and press of  after selecting/entering a function item) is omitted. Scroll selection is explained below using the example of selecting the function "Quality alarm":

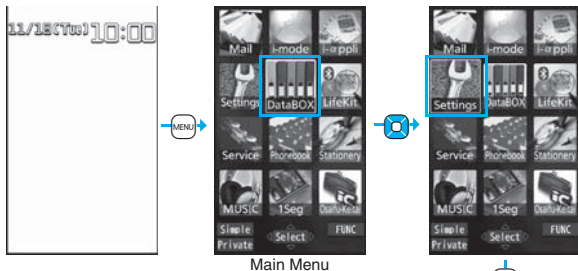
### Description Example of Steps



## STEP

## 1 Select a main menu icon from the menu function

Select "Settings" from Main Menu. Main Menu at purchase differs depending on the body color. (See page 486)



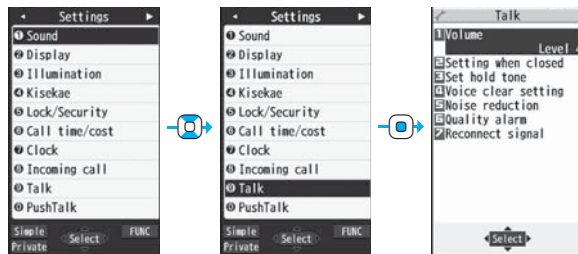
Main Menu

- Press to highlight the icon. Press and hold to scroll the icons continuously.
- If you have not touched any keys for at least 15 seconds, the Stand-by display returns.

## STEP

## 2 Select a sub-menu item from the menu function

Select "Talk" from "Settings".



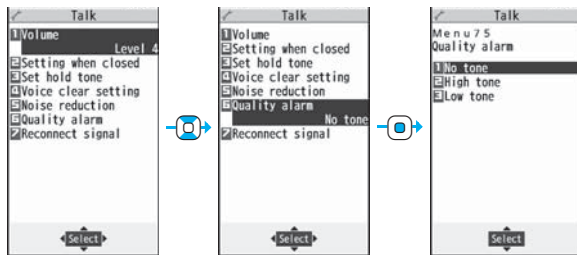
- The highlighted item is the currently selected one.
- Press to highlight the item below, and to highlight the item above.
- Press and hold to scroll the items continuously.
- Press to scroll page by page.

## STEP

# 3

Select a desired lower sub-menu item (function)

Select "Quality alarm" from "Talk".



- Press to highlight the item below, and to highlight the item above.
- Press and hold to scroll the items continuously.
- When the items are listed over multiple pages, the total number of pages and the current page number are shown at the upper right of the display.

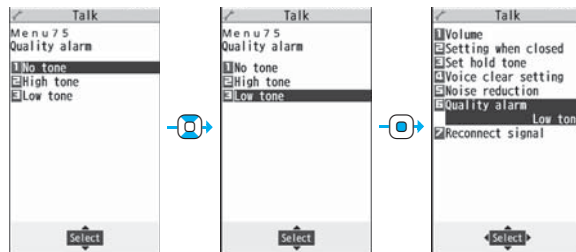
## STEP

# 4

Set or check the function

Some menu items have even more detailed menus.

The example below shows how to set "Low tone" for "Quality alarm".



- The highlighted item is the currently selected one.
- Press to highlight the item below, and to highlight the item above.
- Press and hold to scroll the items continuously.

## Menu Number Selection

Menu Number Selection is explained below using the following example:

### Description Example of Menu Number

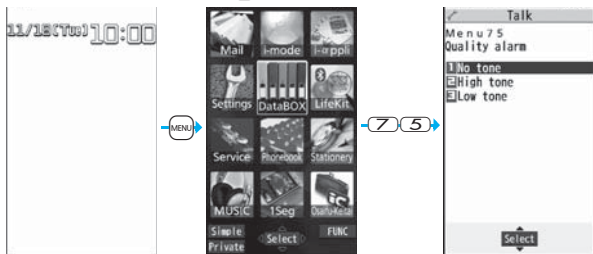


## STEP

# 1

### Bring up the function using the menu number

From the Stand-by display, press **MENU** **7** **5**.



## Horizontal Open Menu

The Horizontal Open Menu enables you to quickly access functions that are available for the horizontal display. To show the Horizontal Open Menu, press **MENU** from the Stand-by display for the horizontal display.

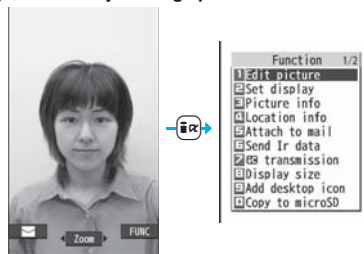
- Horizontal open menu at purchase differs depending on the body color. (See page 486)
- Owing to "Work with style", the Horizontal Open Menu automatically appears at purchase just by switching to Horizontal Open Style.
- By "Hor. open menu set" of "Software setting", you can set the i-appli program which starts when you select "i-appli".
- If you have not touched any keys for at least 15 seconds, the Stand-by display returns.



## Function Menu

If you press **IR** when "FUNC" appears at the lower right of the display, the Function menu including selectable items such as "Save", "Edit", and "Delete" appears in each operation. The contents of the Function menu depend on the display from which you bring up the Function menu.

- When the items are listed over multiple pages, the total number of pages and the current page number are shown at the upper right of the Function Menu display.

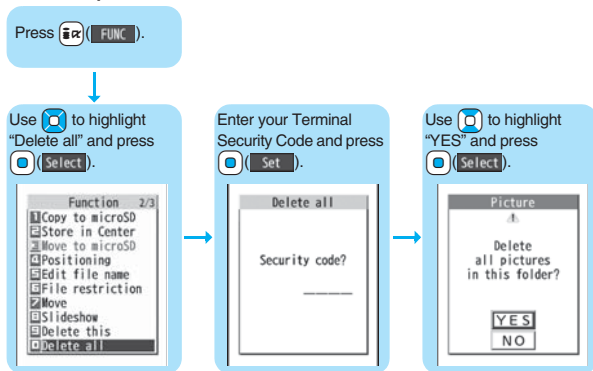


## Description Example for Function Menu

In this manual, the operation of the Function menu is described as follows:

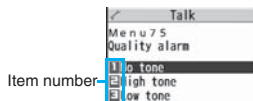
Item displayed in the Function menu	Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Operating procedures after selecting an item in the Function menu	Delete all	You can delete all files. ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

An actual operation is done as follows:



### To select items quickly <Direct selection>

Press the numeric key corresponding to the displayed item number.



### Item scroll

When menu items are listed over multiple pages, you can show the previous/next page by pressing **▲** with the uppermost/lowermost item highlighted. You can press **▼** to scroll through page by page. When **Page ▲/Page ▼** is displayed on the display, you can scroll through page by page also by pressing **MENU** (**Page ▲**) / **SEL** (**Page ▼**).

- Depending on the display being shown, such as lower sub-menu items, you might be able to scroll through page by page also by pressing **▲**/**▼** instead of **▲**/**▼**.

### Check box

With the functions you can select multiple items, put a check mark for check boxes to select them. Each time you press **SELECT**, you can switch "" and "".

With some functions, you can put or clear check marks at a time by pressing **FUNC** and selecting "Select all/Release all" or by pressing **MENU** (**SEL all**) / **RLS all**.

- "" is placed to the selected item depending on the function.



### After finishing the operation

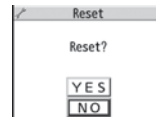
The Lower Sub-menu Item Selection display is shown. When you press **SEL**, the Stand-by display returns (except during Multitask). The Stand-by display or the former display automatically returns depending on the function.

### To cancel the operation midway

Press **SEL**. The contents of the setting are abandoned and the Stand-by display or the former display returns. The confirmation display appears asking whether to abandon the setting contents depending on the function. You can press **CLR** to return to the previous operation.

### When the "YES/NO" selection display appears

Press **▲** to highlight "YES" or "NO", then press **SELECT**.




## Using Simple Menu

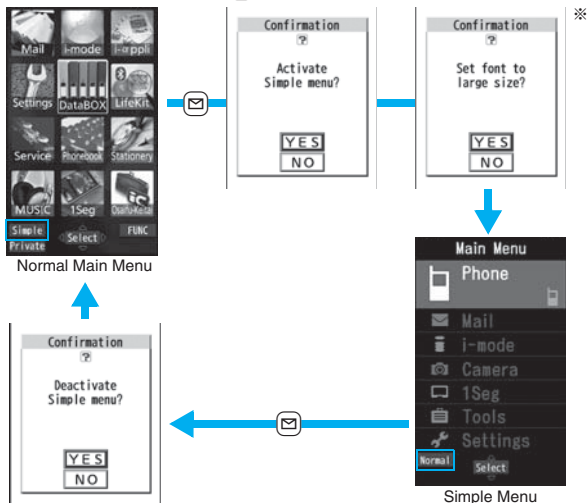
Simple Menu is a menu focusing on only basic functions for easy operation.

- This manual describes the operating procedures in Normal Main Menu only. For how to operate in Simple Menu, see the respective pages of each function.
- You cannot use the Multitask function. (See page 405)

## Switch to Simple Menu












































You can switch between Normal Main Menu and Simple Menu.

From the Stand-by display, press .



※ Select "YES" to set "Set at one time" on page 129 to "Large". Even when you release Simple Menu, the setting does not return. When "Large" has already been set, the confirmation display does not appear.

## Configuration of Simple Menu

Phone	Mail	i-mode	Camera
 Phone  Dialed calls  Received calls  Search phonebook  Add to phonebook  Record message  Own number	 Mail  Received mail  Sent mail  Draft mail  Compose message  Message R/F  Check new mail	 i-mode  Menu  Bookmark  Screen memo  Last URL  Enter URL	 Camera  Take photo  View photos  Record movie  View movies
1Seg	Tools	Settings	
 1Seg  Activate 1Seg  Timer recording  Channel setting	 Tools  Data box  Schedule  Alarm  Calculator  Text memo  Receive Ir data	 Settings  Ring tone/Volume  Display/Font  Call cost  Set time  Security  Service	



## When You do not Remember Key Operation

You can search for the functions you want to know and use, and then check the operating methods. You can execute some functions from “使いかたナビ (Guide)”. This function is available in Japanese Mode only.

### 1 ステーションナリー (Stationery) 使いかたナビ (Guide) Select an item.

#### おすすめ機能 (Recommendable functions)

... Displays the recommendable functions. Go to step 3.

#### キーワード検索 (From keywords)






... Enter keywords and retrieve. Go to step 2

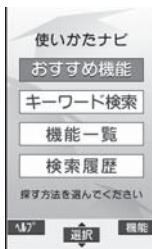
#### 機能一覧検索 (From Function list)

... Retrieves from the function list. Go to step 3.

#### 検索履歴 (Search history)

... Displays up to 30 search histories. Go to step 3.

- Highlight each item and press  (); then the detailed operating methods are displayed. If you highlight “キーワード検索 (From keywords)” and press  () , select “キーワード検索 (From keywords)” or “文字入力のしかた (How to input words)”.
- The 使いかたナビ (Guide) display appears also by selecting the 使いかたナビ (Guide) icon “” pasted on the desktop at purchase.



### 2 Enter a keyword.

Up to 50 search results are displayed.

- You can enter up to 24 full-pitch/48 half-pitch characters.

### 3 Select a function Select an item.







機能の説明 (Description) . . . . . Displays explanations for the function.

操作のしかた (How to operate) . . . Displays the operating method.

この機能を使う (Operate function)

..... Executes the function. Operate each function.

関連機能 (Relevant function) . . . . . Displays up to 10 relevant functions. Repeat step 3.

- For some functions, press  () several times for selection.
- You can display explanations about the function also by pressing  () while highlighting the function.
- To delete search history, press  () and select “1件削除 (Delete this)” or “全削除 (Delete all)”, then select “YES”.

## Using UIM (FOMA Card)

The UIM is an IC card that holds your information such as phone numbers. It can hold data such as Phonebook entries and SMS messages as well. By sharing a UIM, you can operate multiple FOMA phones for multiple purposes.

You cannot use the FOMA phone for communication such as voice and videophone calls, i-mode, sending/receiving mail, or packet communication unless the UIM is inserted.

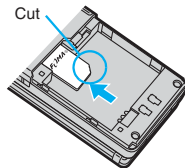
For details on how to use the UIM, refer to the UIM instruction manual. When inserting or removing the UIM, take care not to accidentally touch or scratch the IC.

### Insert/Remove

You need to turn off the power and then remove the battery before you insert the UIM. (See page 41)

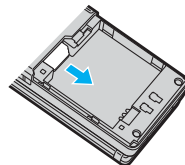
#### ■ Inserting

- 1 With the golden IC surface downward, push the UIM slowly to the bottom while pressing the surface of it.



#### ■ Removing

- 1 While sliding the UIM, pull it slowly.



### Information

- Make sure that you insert/remove the UIM with the FOMA phone closed and held in your hand.
- Take care not to force the UIM into place because this can break it.
- Take care not to lose the UIM once you remove it.
- When you replace your UIM (except during Omakase Lock), you need to enter the four- to eight-digit Terminal Security Code after turning on the power. When you enter the correct Terminal Security Code, the Stand-by display appears. If you enter the incorrect Terminal Security Code five times in succession, the power turns off. (However, you can turn on the power again.)

### Password

You can set two passwords, PIN1 and PIN2, for a UIM. (See page 132)

### Security Function of UIM

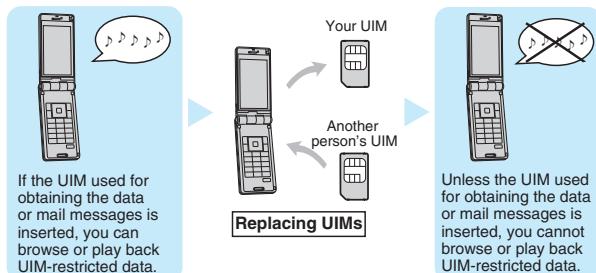
The FOMA phone has the UIM restriction function as a security function to protect your data and files.

If you obtain data and files by the method below with the UIM inserted, UIM restrictions are automatically set to them.

- When downloading images or melodies and so on, from sites or Internet web pages
- When receiving i-mode mail with file attachments

The data or files with the UIM restrictions can be browsed, played back, started, edited, attached to mail, or transferred via infrared rays only when the UIM used for obtaining is inserted. When the UIM used for obtaining the data or files is not inserted, or when another UIM is inserted, these functions are not operable.

- In the explanation hereafter, the UIM used to obtain data and files is referred to as "your UIM" and other UIMs as "another person's UIM".



If the UIM used for obtaining the data or mail messages is inserted, you can browse or play back UIM-restricted data.

#### Replacing UIMs

Unless the UIM used for obtaining the data or mail messages is inserted, you cannot browse or play back UIM-restricted data.

- When the UIM is not inserted or when another person's UIM is inserted, the following types of data and files are displayed with the restrictions symbol, "🔒":
 

• Videophone record messages	• Movie memos	• Screen memos
• Templates	• i-appli programs	• Images
• i-motion movies	• Chara-den images	• Melodies
• Kisekae Tool files	• PDF files	
- Chaku-uta®/Chaku-uta Full® music files
- Downloaded dictionaries
- Files attached or pasted to i-mode mail in the Inbox
- Files attached to i-mode mail in the Outbox/Draft (except the data shot or edited with the FOMA phone)
- Messages R/F with files (melodies or images) attached or pasted
- Images inserted into Deco-mail text
- ※ This function applies to the pre-installed i-appli programs, Chara-den images, Deco-mail pictograms, etc. if they are reinstalled (upgraded) from a site.
- ※ "Chaku-uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Inc.
- The data set with the UIM restrictions appear on the preview display as shown on the right.



**Information**

- When the UIM restrictions are set for data and files, you cannot set those data and files for the functions such as “Display setting” and “Select ring tone” when another person’s UIM is inserted instead.
- If you have set the data and files with the UIM restrictions for the functions such as “Display setting” and “Select ring tone”, these will work with their default settings if you remove your UIM or insert another person’s UIM. If you insert your UIM again, then your settings will be enabled again.
- UIM restrictions are not set for the data received using the infrared data exchange function or data transmission (OBEX™ communication) function or the still images/moving images shot or edited with the FOMA phone.
- Even when another person’s UIM is inserted, data and files set with the UIM restrictions can be moved or deleted.
- The settings of the following functions are stored on the UIM:
  - SMS validity period      · SMS center selection      · Select language
  - PLMN setting              · PIN1 code, PIN2 code      · PIN1 code entry set
  - Validating/Invalidating DoCoMo Certificate 1 and user certificate

**Types of UIM (FOMA Card)**

If you use the blue UIM with your FOMA phone, note that following specifications differ from those of the green/white UIM:

Functions	UIM		Reference
	(blue)	(green/white)	
Number of digits of the phone number that can be stored in the UIM Phonebook	20 max.	26 max.	93
Operation of user certificate to use FirstPass	Cannot be used	Can be used	190
Use of WORLD WING®	Cannot be used	Can be used	472
Use of Service Numbers for “DoCoMo repair counter” and “General inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>”	Cannot be used	Can be used	453

**■ WORLD WING**

WORLD WING is the DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service that enables you to use the current phone number overseas for making and receiving calls using the UIM (green/white) and service compatible mobile phone.

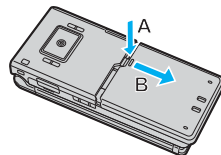
- You do not need to subscribe to WORLD WING if you have subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005. If you offered that you did not need WORLD WING at the time you signed up for the FOMA service, or when you have midway canceled WORLD WING, you are required to take the procedures to newly subscribe to WORLD WING.
- If you have signed up for the FOMA service before August 31, 2005, and have not yet subscribed to WORLD WING, you are required to subscribe to it.
- This service is not available with some billing plans.
- If you lose your UIM (green/white) or have it stolen overseas, immediately contact DoCoMo to take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the UIM. For inquiries, see “DoCoMo Information Center” on the back page of this manual. Note that you are still charged the call and communication fees incurred after you lose it or have it stolen.

**Attaching/Removing Batteries**

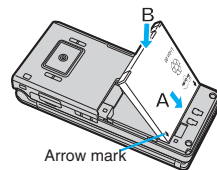
Use the FOMA phone’s dedicated Battery Pack P16.

**■ Attaching**

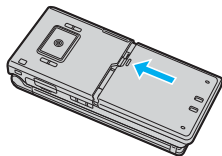
- 1 While pressing the “○” part of the back cover in the direction A, slide the back cover (2 mm or more) in the direction B to unlock.



- 2 With the arrow mark facing up, fit the tab side of the battery pack to the FOMA phone securely, and then push the battery pack into the direction B while pressing it against the direction A.

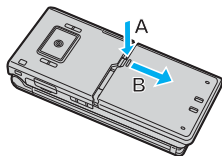


- 3** Slide the back cover in the direction of the arrow and attach it in place.

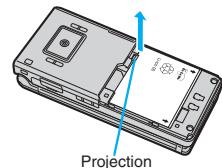


#### Removing

- 1** While pressing the “○” part of the back cover in the direction of A, slide the back cover (2 mm or more) in the direction of B to unlock.



- 2** Take hold of the projection of the battery pack to lift it up.



#### Information

- Make sure that you attach/remove the battery with the FOMA phone closed and held in your hand after you turn off the power. Also, make sure not to press the one-push open button when you attach/remove the battery.
- If you try to force the battery into place, you could damage the UIM or the charging terminal of the FOMA phone.

## Charging

Use the FOMA phone's dedicated Battery Pack P16.

#### Life of battery pack

- Battery packs are consumables. The usable time shortens slightly each time they are charged.
- When the usable time of the battery pack becomes half the time it was purchased, replacing is recommended because the battery pack is nearing the end of its life. Depending on the use conditions, the battery pack may swell as it nears the end of its life, but this is not a problem.
- The life of the battery pack may shorten if you use i-appli programs, talk on the videophone, watch 1Seg programs and so on for a long time during charging.

**For environmental protection, bring the unneeded battery pack to an NTT DoCoMo, dealer, or recycle shop.**



#### Charging

- For details, refer to the instruction manuals for the FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (option), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (option), and FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (option).
- The FOMA AC Adapter 01 supports 100 V AC only. The FOMA AC Adapter 02 and FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use support from 100 V AC through 240 V AC.
- The shape of the plug for the AC adapter is for 100 V AC (for domestic use). To use the AC adapter that supports from 100 V AC through 240 V AC overseas, you need to have a conversion plug adapter that is compatible with the voltage of the country you stay. Do not use a transformer for overseas travel to charge the battery pack.
- Even during charging, you can still answer calls if the FOMA phone is turned on. This will consume the charged amount so that charging will take longer. Also, the standby time or talk time might be shorter if you charge the battery pack with your FOMA phone open.
- If you have a long time videophone call during charging, the temperature in the FOMA phone may rise and charging may be suspended. In such a case, wait for a while and try charging again.
- Remove and insert the connector slowly and carefully, without using unnecessary force.
- Do not remove the battery pack during charging.

## Do not charge for long periods of time (several days) with the FOMA phone turned on.

- If you leave the FOMA phone powered on for long periods of time during charging, you may not be able to use the FOMA phone for long duration as expected and the low battery alarm may sound soon, because the FOMA phone receives the power from the battery pack after charging is completed. If this happens, charge the battery pack correctly. When charging the battery pack again, first remove the FOMA phone from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then set it again.

**Estimated usable time for battery pack** (The usable time for the battery pack varies with the charging time and the remaining life of the battery pack.)

Network	Switch 3G/GSM	Continuous standby time	Continuous talk time
FOMA/3G	3G	In motion: Approx. 000 hours	Voice call: Approx. 000 minutes
	Auto	In motion: Approx. 000 hours Standstill: Approx. 000 hours	Videophone call: Approx. 000 minutes
GSM	Auto	Standstill: Approx. 000 hours	Voice call: Approx. 000 minutes

1Seg watching time
Approx. 000 minutes (In ECO Mode: Approx. 000 minutes)

- ※ The continuous talk time is the estimated time that the FOMA phone can be used for calls when radio waves can be sent and received normally.
- ※ The continuous standby time is the estimated time when radio waves can be received normally. The standby time could be about half of this estimate depending on the charge level of the battery pack, function settings, other ambient conditions such as temperature, and the status of radio waves in the area (weak or no radio waves, for instance). When you use i-mode communication, the talk/communication time and standby time will be shorter. Further, even if you do not make calls or not execute i-mode communication, the talk/communication time and standby time will be shorter if you watch 1Seg programs, compose i-mode mail, start up a downloaded i-oppli program or the i-oppli Stand-by display, execute data communication or Multiaccess, use the camera, play back music, or use Bluetooth connections.
- ※ The continuous talk time and the continuous standby time may be shortened depending on the network environment in the country you stay.
- ※ The continuous standby time for standstill is the average number of hours you can use the FOMA phone in standstill status when it is closed and can receive radio waves normally.
- ※ The continuous standby time for in motion is the average number of hours you can use the FOMA phone in the combined status of "standstill" "moving" and "out of the service area" when it is closed, in an area where it can receive radio waves normally.
- ※ The 1Seg watching time is the estimated time for when radio waves can be received normally with the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01 (option) connected. The watching time might be shortened depending on the charge level of the battery pack, function settings, other ambient conditions such as temperature, and the status of radio waves in the area (weak or no radio waves, for instance).

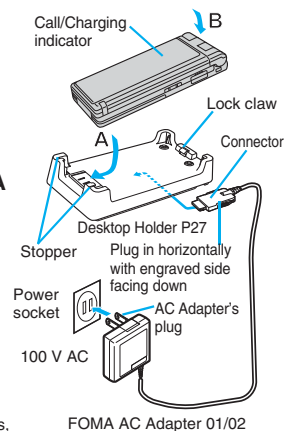
## Estimated time for charging battery pack

AC adapter	Approx. 000 minutes	DC adapter	Approx. 000 minutes
------------	---------------------	------------	---------------------

- ※ The charging time is an estimate of time for when empty battery pack is charged with the FOMA phone turned off. The charging time will be longer if you charge the battery pack with the power of the FOMA phone turned on.

## Charge with AC Adapter and Desktop Holder

- 1 Connect the AC adapter (option) to the desktop holder (option).
- 2 Insert the AC adapter's plug into a power socket.
- 3 Put the bottom of the FOMA phone into the stopper of the desktop holder (A) to fit the head to the lock claw, and then depress the FOMA phone until it clicks (B).



Check that the Call/Charging indicator lights in red.

When the Call/Charging indicator flickers, dismount the AC adapter and battery pack from the FOMA phone and then re-mount them for charging.


If the symptom persists, troubles with the AC adapter, desktop holder or battery pack may be involved, so consult a handling counter such as a DoCoMo shop.

- The charging confirmation tone (see page 111) sounds when charging starts and ends. However, it does not sound when the power is off or during Manner Mode or Public Mode (Drive Mode).
- Be sure to set the FOMA phone firmly onto the desktop holder. Also, be careful that the connector cover or a commercial strap is not caught between the FOMA phone and desktop holder.
- Charging can be done even when the FOMA phone is open.

#### 4 When charging is completed, hold the desktop holder and lift up the head of FOMA phone to remove.

- Unplug the AC adapter from the power socket when you are not going to use it for a long time.

#### Indicator and display during charging and when charging is completed

	Call/Charging indicator	"  " display
Charging	Lights in red	Blinks
Charging completed	Off	Lights

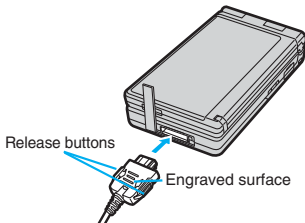
- When the FOMA phone is turned off, "" does not appear. If you start charging with the battery flat, the Call/Charging indicator might not light immediately; however, charging itself has started.

#### When charging only with the AC adapter

Insert the connector with the engraved surface facing up until it clicks. Pull straight the connector out while pressing the release buttons.

- ※ Check the facing direction (front or rear) of the AC adapter plug and then insert or pull it horizontally into or out of the FOMA phone.

Malfunction could result if you try to pull it forcibly.



#### DC adapter (option)

With the DC adapter, you can use a cigarette lighter socket (12 V/24 V) of cars to charge the FOMA phone with the battery pack attached.

For details, refer to the instruction manual for the FOMA DC Adapter 01/02.

#### Information

- If the fuse blows off when charging with the DC adapter, be sure to use a 2A fuse. The 2A fuse is consumables, so purchase at auto parts stores in your neighborhood.

#### <Battery Level>

### Checking Battery Level

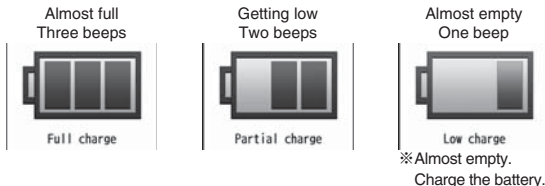
When the FOMA phone is turned on, an estimate of the battery level is indicated by the icon.

- **Almost full** ..... 
  - **Getting low** ..... 
  - **Almost empty** ..... 
- Charge the battery when it is almost empty.

#### Check by Display and Tone



You can check an estimate of the battery level by the display and sound.

- 1  Settings ▶ Other settings ▶ Battery ▶ Battery level

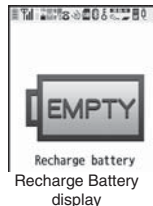


- The pictograph disappears in about three seconds.

#### When the battery is running out

The display on the right appears and the low battery alarm sounds for about 10 seconds. To stop this alarm, press any key other than  and . About one minute later, the FOMA phone will be turned off.

- During a call, a beeping tone from the earpiece notifies you of the low battery. About 20 seconds later your call will be cut and then one minute later the FOMA phone will be turned off.





&lt;Power ON/OFF&gt;

## Turning Power On/Off

### Turn Power On

#### 1 Press and hold for at least one second.

After the Wake-up display (see page 116) is displayed, the Stand-by display appears.

- If you have stored many Phonebook entries or mail messages, it may take a while for the display to appear.
- If Set Time is set, the current date and time are shown.
- When “” is displayed, the FOMA phone is out of the service area or in the place where the radio waves do not reach. Move to a location where “” disappears.
- If “Starting System Wait a minute” is displayed when you turn on the power, wait for a while and then proceed.



Stand-by display



#### When your UIM is replaced (except during Omakase Lock)

Enter the four- to eight-digit Terminal Security Code after turning on the power. When you enter the correct Terminal Security Code, the Stand-by display appears. If you enter the incorrect Terminal Security Code five times in succession, the power turns off. (However, you can turn on the power again.)


#### When “PIN1 code entry set” of “UIM setting” is set to “ON”

Enter the four- to eight-digit PIN1 code after you turn on the power. When you enter the correct PIN1 code, the Stand-by display appears. See page 132 for PIN1 code.

#### When “Auto reset setting” of “Notice call cost” is set to “ON” (except during Omakase Lock)

Enter the four- to eight-digit PIN2 code after you turn on the power. When you enter the correct PIN2 code, the Stand-by display appears. If you press  or  without entering the correct PIN2 code, “Auto reset setting” is set to “OFF” and the Stand-by display appears. See page 132 for PIN2 code.

### Information

- Each entry display appears in the order of “PIN1 code” → “Terminal Security Code” → “PIN2 code”.
- The mail message “未定” has been saved by default. Press  twice or operate “Display Mail from Inbox” on page 218, you can display the mail.

### Turn Power Off

#### 1 Press and hold for at least two seconds.

The exit display appears and the power turns off.

- You cannot turn on the power immediately after turning off the power. Wait a few seconds.

### <Select Language>

MENU 1 5

## Switching to English

#### 1 設定 (Settings) ▶ ディスプレイ (Display)

##### ▶ バイリンガル (Select language)

##### ▶ Japanese (日本語) or English (英語)

- The following functions are different between Japanese display and English display:

Functions	Japanese	English
Info Notice Setting	電子音 (Electrical tone) ボイス (Voice) OFF	ON Not available OFF
“Clock” of Display Setting → “Day of week”	Available	Not available
使いかたナビ (Guide)	Available	Not available
Voice Guidance	Available	Not available

### Information

- When you insert the UIM, the “バイリンガル (Select language)” setting is stored on the UIM.

&lt;Initial Setting&gt;

## Executing Initial Settings

If the date and time, Terminal Security Code, Keypad Sound, Location Request Menu, or Character Size is not set, the Initial Setting display appears when you turn on the power. You can set the initial settings also from each menu function separately.

### 1 Turn on the power ▶ YES

- When the display for entering your Terminal Security Code, PIN1 code, or PIN2 code appears, follow the operation on page 45.



### 2 Set the date and time.

You can select "Auto time adjust ON" or "Auto time adjust OFF" for setting the time. (See page 46)

### 3 Set your Terminal Security Code.

You can set your Terminal Security Code required for setting functions. (See page 132)

- Enter "0000" ▶ Enter your new Terminal Security Code (four to eight digits) ▶ YES

### 4 Set Keypad Sound.

You can set the keypad whether to make a sound. (See page 111)

### 5 Set Location Request Menu.

You can set whether to notify your current location for when a GPS location provision request arrives. (See page 288)

### 6 Set the size of characters.

You can set the size of characters on the display at a time. (See page 129)

#### Information

- When an unset function is found, the Initial Setting display for the unset function appears each time you turn on the power.

#### Information

- The completed settings are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing (Back) or (CLR) midway.
- When the power is automatically turned on by alarm notification, the Initial Setting display does not appear even if there is any unset function.
- When you finish the initial settings, the confirmation display appears telling that updating software is executed automatically. This display appears only at the first time, and after that, does not appear until you execute Reset Settings or Initialize.

&lt;Set Time&gt;

MENU 3 1

## Setting Date and Time

You can select whether to correct the time automatically or set it manually. The time is set/displayed on the 24-hour basis.

### 1 (MENU) ▶ Settings ▶ Clock ▶ Set time ▶ Auto time adjust ON or Auto time adjust OFF

#### Auto time adjust ON

... Corrects the date/time automatically. The setting is completed.

When the time cannot be corrected automatically such as when "⏸" is displayed and the date/time has not been set, the Manual Time Setting display appears. Follow step 2 to set the date/time.

#### Auto time adjust OFF

... Sets the date/time manually.

- When "Notice call cost" is set to "ON", you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.

### 2 Enter year, month, date and time.

Use (Left) to move the cursor and enter numbers by the numeric keys.

- To enter one-digit numeral for the date and time, enter two digits beginning with "0" as in "01" through "09".
- Highlight "time zone" and press (Edit) to set the time zone. Use (Left) to select a region and press (Select).





## About date/time correction function

The time displayed on the FOMA phone is corrected according to the clock information obtained from the network.

The time is corrected when you show the Stand-by display with "Auto time adjust ON" set. If you want to set the time with a lag, set the time manually.

- Some few second errors might occur. You might not be able to correct the time depending on the radio wave conditions, or the i-appli program set for the i-appli Stand-by display.
- When you receive the clock information overseas and the time difference correction information differs from the previously received one, "Time is adjusted" is displayed and the time difference is corrected automatically. Press "OK" to update the time and show Redial, Dialed Calls, Received Calls, sent/received mail messages and others in local time.
- When the time difference is corrected overseas, the sub clock (Japanese date/time, etc.) is displayed below the clock on the Stand-by display.
- Depending on the networks overseas, the time difference might not be corrected.

### Information

- Unless Set Time is set, the functions which use the clock such as Schedule do not work correctly. Further, the date/time for redial items and received call records are not stored.
- The set time is retained even when the battery pack is replaced, however, it might be reset if the battery pack is left removed for a long time. In that case, charge the FOMA phone and then perform the clock setting.
- The sub clock is not displayed while "Set time" is set to "Auto time adjust OFF" or in Japan.
- This function supports clock settings from 00:00 on January 1, 2008 through 23:59 on December 31, 2037.

## <World Time Watch>

# Displaying World Time

You can display the time of the specified area under the Stand-by display clock.

- 1  Settings ▶ Clock ▶ World time watch ▶ ON or OFF  
▶ Use  to select an area and press  (Select).

### Information

- World Time Watch does not appear when "Display setting" → "Clock" → "Clock display" is set to "OFF", or when you use the FOMA phone overseas.

## Summer Time

You can advance the time displayed for the overseas country you stay and for a region of World Time Watch by one hour.

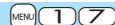
- 1  Settings ▶ Clock ▶ Summer time ▶ ON or OFF

## <Caller ID Notification>

# Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number

You can set the FOMA phone to send your phone number to the called party's phone when dialing. Your phone number is important information, so take utmost care when notifying your phone number. This function is available only when the other party's phone supports Caller ID.

## Set Caller ID Notification to Network



You can set whether to notify your caller ID on the network.

- 1  Service ▶ Caller ID notification  
▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Activate	▶ ON or OFF
Check setting	You can check the setting contents of "Activate".

## Set Caller ID Notification when Making a Call

Each time you dial out, you can set whether to notify your caller ID.

- 1 Enter a phone number  
or  
bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

## 2 (FUNC) ▶ Notify caller ID

### ▶ Don't notify or Notify caller (OFF or ON)


- To release "Notify caller ID", select "Cancel prefix". Whether to notify or not follows the setting for "Activate" of "Caller ID notification".

### Set "Notify/Not Notify" by Entering "186/184"

You can select whether to notify the other party of your phone number also by entering "186"/"184" before the other party's phone number.


#### To notify your caller ID

### 1 186 → Destination phone number ▶ or (Dial)


- Press  to make a videophone call.

#### Not to notify your caller ID

### 1 184 → Destination phone number ▶ or (Dial)

- Press  to make a videophone call.

#### Information

- When you make a call and hear the guidance requesting your caller ID (see page 452), follow the steps of "To notify your caller ID" to enter "186" and redial.
- When you make a PushTalk call, "Activate" of "Caller ID notification" or "Notify caller ID" is valid, but "notify/not notify" by adding "186"/"184" is invalid.
- You cannot set "Caller ID notification" while  is displayed.

<Own Number>

MENU 

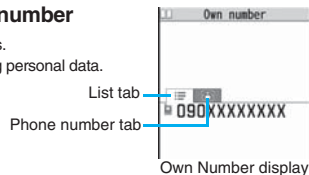
## Checking Your Own Number

- Your phone number (own number) is stored on the UIM.




### 1 (MENU) ▶ Phonebook ▶ Own number

You can press  to switch the tabs.

- See page 417 for storing/displaying personal data.



#### Information

- In Dual Mode of 2in1, you can switch between Number A and Number B by pressing  from the Own Number display. " appears for Number A, and " appears for Number B.
- When you replace a UIM with another one (2in1 contractor → 2in1 contractor) while using 2in1, perform "2in1 function OFF" (see page 457) and then set "2in1 setting" to "YES", or perform "Auto acquire No. B" (see page 418), to acquire the correct Number B.
- When you replace a UIM with another one (2in1 contractor → 2in1 non-contractor), perform "2in1 function OFF" as well to update the owner's information to the correct one.

# Voice/Videophone Calls

## Making Calls/Videophone Calls

About Videophone .....	50
Making a Call/Videophone Call .....	50
Switching between a Voice Call and Videophone Call .....	53
Using Call Records . . . . . <Redial> <Dialed Calls> <Received Calls>	54
Using Chaku-moji .....	<Chaku-moji> 57
Sending Touch-tone Signals .....	<Pause Dial> 59
International Calls .....	<WORLD CALL> 60
Setting for International Calls .....	<International Dial Assist> 61
Storing Numbers to be Added to the Beginning of a Phone Number .....	<Prefix Setting> 62
Making a Call with Specified Sub-address .....	<Sub-address Setting> 62
Setting Alarm for Reconnecting .....	<Reconnect Signal> 62
Adjusting Voice According to Surrounding Noise .....	<Voice Clear Setting> 63
Reducing Surrounding Noise to Make Voice Clear .....	<Noise Reduction> 63
Switching to Hands-free .....	<Hands-free> 63
Using Hands-free Compatible Devices .....	<In-Car Hands-free> 63

## Receiving Calls/Videophone Calls

Receiving a Call/Videophone Call .....	64
Switched between a Voice Call and Videophone Call by the Other Party .....	65
Setting Response of Key Operation for Answering Incoming Calls .....	<Answer Setting> 66
Setting Response for when Opening FOMA Phone during Ringing .....	<Setting when Opened> 66
Setting Response for when Closing FOMA Phone during a Call .....	<Setting when Closed> 67
Adjusting Earpiece Volume .....	<Volume> 67
Adjusting Ring Volume .....	<Ring Volume> 68

## When You Cannot or Could not Answer the Call

Putting an Incoming Call on Hold when You cannot Answer at Once .....	<On Hold> 68
Putting a Call on Hold during a Call .....	<Holding> 68
Setting Hold Tone .....	<Set Hold Tone> 69
Using Public Mode (Drive Mode) .....	<Public Mode (Drive Mode)> 69
Using Public Mode (Power Off) .....	<Public Mode (Power Off)> 70
If You could not Answer an Incoming Call .....	<Missed Calls> 71
Recording Voice/Video Messages when You cannot Answer the Call .....	<Record Message Setting> 71
Recording Voice/Video Messages when You cannot Answer the Call during Ringing .....	<Quick Record Message> 72
Playing Back/Erasing Record Messages/a Voice Memo/Videophone Record Messages/Movie Memos .....	<Play/Erase Messages> <Play/Erase Videophone Messages> 73

## Making Full Use of Videophone Calls

Using Chara-den .....	74
Useful Functions for Videophone Calls .....	75
Setting Videophone Hands-free . . . . . <Hands-free with Videophone>	77
Setting Image Quality for Videophone Calls . . . . . <Visual Preference>	77
Changing Image Displays for Videophone Calls . . . . . <Select Image>	77
Redialing as a Voice Call when a Videophone Call cannot be Connected .....	<Voice Call Auto Redial> 78
Setting for Switching between a Voice Call and a Videophone Call .....	<Notify Switchable Mode> 78
Selecting Response to Incoming Videophone Calls during i-mode .....	<Videophone while Packet> 78
Connecting FOMA Phone to External Devices to Use Videophone Function .....	79
Checking inside the Room when You are Out .....	<Remote Monitoring> 79

## About Videophone

You and the other party can talk viewing each other's images.

DoCoMo videophones conform to 3G-324M, standardized by the international standard 3GPP. You cannot connect to the videophone that uses a different format.

### ●3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project):

This is the regional standards organization for developing common technical specifications for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

### ●3G-324M:

This is the international standard for the third generation of mobile videophones.

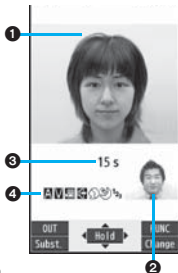
●P906i supports only 64 kbps communication speed of the videophone.

You cannot talk on the videophone at 32 kbps communication speed.

### ■Display during videophone calls

- 1 Receiving image (The other party's image through the camera or substitute image)
- 2 Sending image (Your image through the camera or substitute image)
- 3 Call duration
- 4 Status

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>A</b>: Voice sending/receiving</li> <li><b>A</b> (gray): Voice sending/receiving failed*1</li> <li><b>V</b>: Image sending/receiving</li> <li><b>V</b> (gray): Image sending/receiving failed*2</li> <li><b>📷</b>: Camera image sending</li> <li><b>📺</b>: Substitute image sending</li> <li><b>🗣️</b>: Chara-den talking</li> <li><b>👤</b>: Hands-free activated</li> <li><b>📺</b>: AV output</li> <li><b>📶</b>: Bluetooth communicating</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>👤</b>: Portrait</li> <li><b>👤</b>: Close-up</li> <li><b>👤</b>: Landscape</li> <li><b>🌙</b>: Night Mode</li> <li><b>👤</b>: Chara-den Whole Action Mode</li> <li><b>👤</b>: Chara-den Parts Action Mode</li> <li><b>🗣️</b>: DTMF Transmission Mode</li> </ul>
--	--



\*1 When voice sending fails, the other party cannot hear your voice.

When voice receiving fails, you cannot hear the other party's voice.

\*2 When image sending fails, the sending image is not displayed at the other end.

When image receiving fails, the receiving image is not displayed.

When voice or image sending/receiving fails, it does not recover automatically. You need to make a videophone call again.

## Making a Call/Videophone Call

### 1 Enter the other party's phone number, starting with the city code.

- When 27 or more digits are entered, the lower 26 digits only are displayed.
- To store an entered phone number in the Phonebook, press **MENU** (**Store**). Go to step 2 of "Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook" on page 96.
- Even when you are dialing within the same area, you need to enter the city code before the phone number.



### 2 When Making a Voice Call




Press **📞** or **📞** (**Dial**).

- "📞" blinks during dialing, and lights during a call.




## When Making a Videophone Call

Press  (V. phone).

- “” blinks during dialing and lights during the call.
- During a videophone call, you can press  to display the substitute image at the other party. To resume the image through your camera, press  again.



The digital communication charging starts from this display.


**3** Press  to end the call after talking.

### Information

- If you hear the guidance requesting your caller ID (see page 452), follow the steps of “To notify your caller ID” on page 48 to enter “186” and redial.
- When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, you can hear the other party’s voice from the earphone. (See page 423)
- If you close the FOMA phone during a call, the FOMA phone works in accordance with the setting of “Setting when closed”. (See page 67)
- If you switch to Horizontal Open Style during a call, the FOMA phone is set to “No tone”. (See page 67)
- You can press numeric keys to send touch-tone signals during a call. During a Chara-den call, you need to switch to DTMF Transmission Mode. (See page 76)
- You cannot make a call in Horizontal Open Style. However, when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, you can make a voice call in Horizontal Open Style.
- In Dual Mode of 2in1, you can make a call after selecting Number A or Number B. (See page 458)

### Information

#### <For Voice Calls>

- You can make a voice call also by pressing  and then entering the party’s phone number. If you enter a wrong number, press  to clear the display and then redial.

#### <For Videophone Calls>






- Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated by “Hands-free w/ V. phone” (see page 77). However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of “Hands-free w/ V. phone”.
- When you make a videophone call with substitute image, note that you will still be charged for the digital communication, not the voice calls.
- If you make a videophone call at 110/119/118 from the FOMA phone, it is automatically dialed out as a voice call.
- During a videophone call, you can send a Chara-den image to the other party instead of the image through your camera. (See page 74)
- The international videophone call is available using the DoCoMo international call service “WORLD CALL”. (See page 60)

### Display during dialing

The other party’s name and icon are displayed if the party’s phone number and name are stored in the Phonebook. However, the image is not displayed even if it is stored in the Phonebook.

- If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name that comes first in the search order (see page 98) is displayed.
- The phone number instead of the name is displayed if the Phonebook entry is stored as secret data or if Personal Data Lock is activated.

### If you entered a wrong phone number

- Each time you press , the digit on the far right is cleared. If you press and hold  for at least one second, all the digits are cleared and the Stand-by display returns.
- Press  to move the cursor to the digit you want to clear, and then press  to clear it. To clear all the digits on and to the right of the cursor, press and hold  for at least one second.

### If a videophone call could not be connected

The reason why it could not be connected is displayed. (The displayed reason might not be the same as the actual reason depending on the type of the other party's phone and contract for network services.)

Messages	Reasons
Check number, then redial	You have dialed a non-existent phone number.
Busy	The other party is busy. (Depending on the receiver's phone, this message might be displayed during packet communication as well.)
Busy with packet transmission	The packet communication is progress at the other end.
Out of service area/power off	The other party's phone is out of the service area or turned off.
Set caller ID to ON	Your caller ID is not notified. (when dialing "visualnet", etc.)
Your call is being forwarded	During forwarding
Redial using voice call	The other party activates Call Forwarding Service but the forwarding destination phone does not support videophone calls.
Upper limit has been exceeded Connection failed	The upper limit for the plan with the limit function (Type Limit, Family Wide Limit) is exceeded.
Please make your call from the i-mode web page	You did not make a videophone call from the IP (Information Provider) site among i-mode official sites (at dialing to V-live).
Connection failed	Redial after setting "Activate" of "Caller ID notification" to "ON". ● This may appear in the case other than above.

### Auto-redialing

If "Voice call auto redial" is set to "ON", and a videophone call is not connected, a voice call is automatically made.

- Videophone calls cannot be connected to the phones that do not support the videophone function, or to the phones that are out of the service area or turned off even if they are videophones. If you have set "Voice call auto redial" to "ON" and attempt to dial a phone that does not have the videophone function, the number will be redialed as a voice call. However, this operation might not work if you call the phone connected with ISDN-synchronous 64K or the ISDN videophone that does not support 3G-324M (as of March 2008), or if you dial the wrong number. Note that you could be charged for the communication.
- Once the videophone call has started communications, redialing as a voice call will not be made.

### Function Menu while Entering Phone Number

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Notify caller ID</b>	See page 47.
<b>Prefix numbers</b>	See page 62.
<b>Int'l dial assist</b>	See page 61.
<b>Select image</b>	See page 78.
<b>Multi number</b>	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party. (See page 456.)
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	See page 96.
<b>Compose message</b>	You can compose a mail message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 198.
<b>Chaku-moji</b>	See page 57.

## Switching between a Voice Call and Videophone Call

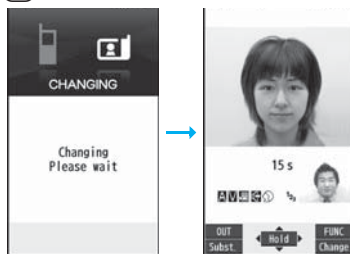
You (caller) can switch between a voice call and a videophone call. This function is available for the mobile phones that can switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

### Switch from a Voice Call to Videophone Call

When the other party's phone has a function to switch between the calls, "V. phone" is displayed on your phone and you can switch from the voice call to videophone call.

#### 1 During a voice call ▶ Change

- When you select an image to be sent to the other party, select "Select image". Go to step 2 on page 78.
- When "Cancel" is selected, the FOMA phone cancels switching and returns to the voice call.
- While switching, the voice guidance is played back.



### Switch from a Videophone Call to Voice Call

When the other party's phone has a function to switch between calls, you can switch from a videophone call to a voice call by selecting "CHG to voice call" from the Function menu.

#### 1 During a videophone call ▶ (FUNC) ▶ CHG to voice call ▶ YES

- Select "NO" on the confirmation display to the other party and to resume the videophone call.
- While switching, the voice guidance is played back.



#### Information

- You can switch between a voice call and a videophone call repeatedly.
- When i-mode or packet communication is in progress, the communication is disconnected and then the voice call is switched to the videophone call.
- When packet communication is in progress at the other end, the message to the effect that the communication cannot be switched is displayed and the voice call continues without switching to the videophone call.
- You cannot switch from a voice call to a videophone call while "Multi calling" is displayed during a call if you have signed up for Call Waiting Service.
- It takes about five seconds to switch. Switching may take a longer time depending on the radio wave conditions.
- Depending on how the caller's phone is working or on the radio wave conditions, switching between a voice call and a videophone call may fail and the connection may be cut off.
- If you switch between a voice call and a videophone call during a call, the call duration and call cost are counted respectively for each call. You are not charged while "Changing" is displayed.
- You cannot switch between a videophone call and a voice call unless "Notify switchable mode" on page 78 is set to "Indication ON" at the other end.
- When you switch from a videophone call to a voice call, Hands-free is deactivated.

&lt;Redial&gt; &lt;Dialed Calls&gt; &lt;Received Calls&gt;

## Using Call Records

The FOMA phone can store the other party's phone number and date/time you have dialed or received. You can call back to the other party.

### ■ Redial

Up to 30 records of dialed voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls are stored in total, and the older record of dialing to the same phone number is deleted. However, the dialing by PushTalk is retained in Redial separately from that of the voice call or videophone call even if you dial to the same phone number.

### ■ Dialed Calls


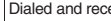

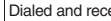

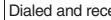

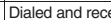
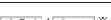
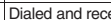



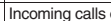
Up to 30 records of dialed voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls are stored in total, and up to 30 records of 64K data and packet communications are stored in total as well. The older records of dialing to the same phone number are also retained.


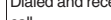









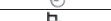
### ■ Received Calls

Up to 30 records of incoming voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls are stored in total, and up to 30 records of 64K data and packet communications are stored in total as well. The older records coming from the same phone number are also retained.

- When a call is switched between a voice call and a videophone call, the call that is dialed/received first is stored.
- When more than 30 calls are dialed, the older records are automatically deleted. Even if you turn off the FOMA phone, call records are not deleted.
- In Dual Mode of 2in1, up to 60 redial items, 90 dialed call records, and 120 received call records for Number A and Number B are stored in total.

### ■ Icons for Redial, Dialed Calls, and Received Calls

 	※ Dialed and received calls/misssed calls of voice call
 	※ Dialed and received calls/misssed calls of videophone call
 	※ Dialed and received calls/misssed calls of PushTalk
 	※ Dialed and received group calls/misssed group calls of PushTalk
 	※ Dialed and received calls/misssed calls of PushTalk via server's phonebook
	Voice/Video messages are recorded on Record Message
	Incoming calls of Remote Monitoring
 	※ Dialed and received calls/misssed calls of international call

 	※ Dialed and received calls/misssed calls of international videophone call
	Dialed calls of 64K data communication
 	※ Received calls/misssed calls of 64K data communication
	Dialed calls of packet communication
 	※ Received calls/misssed calls of packet communication
	Received calls of 64K data communication and packet communication when no external device is connected
	Received Chaku-moji message
	Records with time difference corrected
	Records for Number B (only in Dual Mode of 2in1)

※ The unchecked missed call icons are highlighted.

## Use Redial/Dialed Calls

1






### When Using Redial





Press .

### When Using Dialed Calls

 **Phonebook**  **Dialed/recv. calls**  
**Dialed calls**

The list for call records is displayed.

- For redial items of PushTalk, press  (Select) to show the Redial list of the group. Highlight a party and press  to make a PushTalk call. If you do not highlight any party and press , you can make a group call.
- Press  (change) to display the Sent Address list.
- You cannot display the Redial list even when you press  when the Stand-by display appears on the horizontal display.

Redial 1/2	
11/18 10:00	
03XXXXXXXX	
11/18 9:50	
DoCoMo Taro	
11/18 9:30	
DoCoMo Jiro	
11/18 9:20	
090XXXXXXXX	

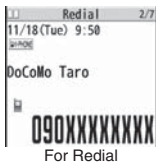
For Redial



## 2 Select a call record.

The detailed display for the call record is displayed.

- When the other party is stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are displayed. If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name and icon that come first in the search order (see page 98) are displayed.



## 2 Select a received call record.

- The other party's phone number is displayed if it is provided. If this caller is stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are displayed. If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name and icon that come first in search order (see page 98) are displayed. If there is a call for packet communication, the sender's access point name (APN) is displayed. When the other party's phone number is not notified, the reason for no caller ID is displayed.
- For missed calls, the ring time is displayed on the right of the received date/time.
- When a Chaku-moji message is received, it is displayed.



## Use Received Calls






### 1 Press .

- You can display the Received Call list also by

-  Phonebook ▶ Dialed/recv. calls
- ▶ Received calls ▶ All calls or Missed calls.

All calls . . . . . All the records including missed calls  
Missed calls. . . The records of missed calls only  
In Dual Mode of 2in1, the number of missed calls for Number A and Number B is displayed respectively.

(If unchecked missed calls are found, the number of them is displayed.)



- For received call records of PushTalk, press  (Select) to show the Received Call list of the group with "★" mark added to the caller. Highlight a party and press  to make a PushTalk call. If you do not highlight any party and press , you can make a group call.
- Press  (Change) to display the Received Address list.
- You cannot display the Received Call list even when you press  when the Stand-by display appears on the horizontal display.





## To make a call to a displayed redial item, dialed call record, or received call record


Press  to make a voice call. You can make a voice call also by pressing  from the detailed display. Press  to make a videophone call and press  to make a PushTalk call.

### Information

- You can make a voice call to the most recently dialed or received number by pressing  from the Stand-by display and then .
- When you make/receive a call with an additional number of Multi Number, the stored name for the additional number is displayed below the phone number on the detailed display. If you store a phone number for "Number setting" of "Multi number", the phone number is displayed as well.
- Dialed call records of 64K data communication are not stored when you use a Bluetooth device.
- Even if you make a voice call (or videophone call) to the phone number in a received call record with a Chaku-moji message displayed, the received message is not sent.
- When a call comes in from a party who uses a dial-in phone number, a different phone number might be displayed.

## Function Menu while Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls is Displayed

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Notify caller ID	See page 47.
Prefix numbers	See page 62.
Int'l dial assist	See page 61.
2in1 dial	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party in Dual Mode of 2in1. (See page 458)
Multi number	You can select a phone number to notify the other party. (See page 456)
Chaku-moji	See page 57.
Character size	You can switch the character size for the list. (See "Dialed/recv. calls" on page 129)
Add to phonebook	See page 96. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can store the phone number in the Phonebook also by pressing   from the detailed display. Go to step 2 of "Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook" on page 96.</li> </ul>
Ring time [Received Call list only]	You can display the ring time for missed calls. Even if you have set "Missed calls display" of "Ring time" to "Not display", the missed calls which stopped ringing within the ring start time and their ring times are displayed.
Add desktop icon	See page 127.
Compose message	You can compose a mail message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 198.
Compose SMS	You can compose an SMS message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 244.
Sent address [Redial/Dialed Calls only]	See page 229.
Received address [Received Calls only]	See page 229.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Delete this	▶ YES
Delete selected	▶ Put a check mark for redial items, dialed call records, or received call records to be deleted▶  (Finish)▶ YES
Delete all	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code▶ YES
Select image	See page 78.
Store in P-Talk PB	▶ YES
Store P-Talk group	▶ Select a group. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When members who are not stored in the PushTalk Phonebook are found, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store them.</li> </ul> ▶ Enter a group name. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>

## Information

<Delete this> <Delete selected> <Delete all>

- If you execute "Delete all" from the Function menu of Redial/Dialed Calls, all records in both Redial and Dialed Calls are deleted. Even if you execute "Delete this" or "Delete selected" of Redial, the records are not deleted from Dialed Calls and they are retained. To delete the dialed call records, delete them from the Function menu while "Dialed calls" is displayed.

<Store in P-Talk PB>

- You cannot store from the call record for the party who is not stored in the Phonebook.

<Store P-Talk group>

- You cannot store in a PushTalk group unless all the members are stored in the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

## Using Chaku-moji

When making a voice call or videophone call, you can send your text message to tell the subject during calling.

- For details on Chaku-moji or compatible models, refer to DoCoMo web page or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- The sending end is charged, but the receiving end is not charged.

### When a Chaku-moji message is received

A Chaku-moji message is displayed below a caller. The Chaku-moji message is stored in Received Calls as well.

- The Chaku-moji message is displayed only during ringing. It is not displayed during a call.
- Even when a Chaku-moji message comes in within the ring start time set by "Ring time", it is received and recorded in Received Calls.
- The Chaku-moji message is displayed on the Private window when "Chaku-moji" of "Called" on page 117 is set to "ON".
- The Chaku-moji message is not displayed during Lock All, Omakase Lock, or Personal Data Lock. However, you can check the Chaku-moji message from Received Calls after the lock is released.



### Store Messages

You can store up to 10 Chaku-moji messages in the Message list.

- 1 **Service** ▶ **Chaku-moji** ▶ **Create message**  
▶ **Highlight <Not stored> and press** **(Edit)**  
▶ **Enter a message.**

- To edit a stored message, highlight it and press **(Edit)**.
- You can enter up to 10 characters regardless of whether they are pictographs, symbols, or full-pitch/half-pitch characters.

### Make a Call with a Message

- 1 **Enter a phone number**  
or

bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

## 2 **(FUNC)** ▶ **Chaku-moji** ▶ Do the following operations.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Create message</b>	You can create a Chaku-moji message just before dialing. ▶ <b>Enter a message.</b> • You can enter up to 10 characters regardless of whether they are pictographs, symbols, or full-pitch/half-pitch characters. • The Chaku-moji message created using this function is not stored in the Message list.
<b>Select message</b>	From the Message list, you can select a stored message. ▶ <b>Select a message.</b>
<b>Sent messages</b>	From the Sent Message list, you can select a Chaku-moji message to be sent. Up to 10 sent Chaku-moji messages only are stored in the Sent Message list. If you send the same Chaku-moji message, the older one is deleted. When the number of sent Chaku-moji messages exceeds 10, the messages are deleted from the oldest one. ▶ <b>Select a sent message.</b>

## 3 Press or **(Dial)**.

- Press **(V. phone)** to make a videophone call.
- The Chaku-moji message being sent is displayed during dialing.

### Information

- When a Chaku-moji message has arrived at the other party's phone, "Transmission completed" is displayed, and you are charged a transmission fee.
- When a Chaku-moji message does not arrive at the other party's phone such as when the other party's phone is not a Chaku-moji compatible mobile phone or the call is not allowed by "Message disp. settings" at the receiving end, "Transmission failed" is displayed. In this case, you are not charged a transmission fee.
- Depending on the radio wave conditions, the transmission result may not be displayed at the sending end even if a Chaku-moji message has arrived at the other party's phone. In this case, you are charged a transmission fee.
- Even if you make a call sending a Chaku-moji message, the Chaku-moji message is not displayed and you are not charged a transmission fee (the call is not recorded in Received Calls at the receiving end) when the other party's phone is out of the service area, turned off, during Public Mode (Drive Mode), or the ring time for Record Message Setting is set to zero seconds. Also, the transmission result is not displayed at the sending end.

**Information**




- When a videophone call is not connected and automatically dialed as a voice call, the Chaku-moji message is resent as well.
- Chaku-moji does not support PushTalk.
- You cannot send/receive Chaku-moji messages overseas.



**Detailed Sent Message**

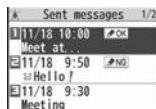
Up to 10 sent Chaku-moji messages are stored in Sent Messages, and you can check for the other party's phone number and the date/time the Chaku-moji messages were sent. Older messages sent to the same phone number are also retained.

- In Dual Mode of 2in1, up to 10 records for Number A and Number B can be displayed in total.

## 1 Service ▶ Chaku-moji ▶ Sent messages

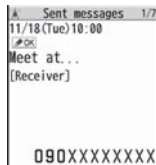
-  . . . . Chaku-moji message successfully sent
-  . . . . Chaku-moji message unsuccessfully sent
-  . . . . Chaku-moji message for Number B (only in Dual Mode of 2in1)


- When the transmission result is not displayed, " OK" or " NG" is not displayed.
- Depending on the radio wave conditions, the transmission result might not be displayed correctly.



## 2 Select a sent message.

- When the other party's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are displayed.

**Function Menu while Detailed Sent Message is Displayed**

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Store	You can store a sent Chaku-moji message in the Message list. ▶ <Not stored> • You can store also by pressing  <b>Store</b> .
Delete this	▶ YES
Delete all	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

**Message Display Settings**

You can set how incoming Chaku-moji messages are displayed.

## 1 Service ▶ Chaku-moji ▶ Message disp. settings ▶ Select an item.

- Display all messages** . . . . Displays Chaku-moji messages from all callers.
- Numbers stored in PB** . . . . Displays Chaku-moji messages only from the callers stored in the Phonebook.
- Calls with callerID** . . . . . Displays Chaku-moji messages only from the caller notifying his/her phone number.
- Hide all messages** . . . . . Does not display Chaku-moji messages.

**Information**

- When you set to "Numbers stored in PB", you cannot receive Chaku-moji messages from the callers stored in the Phonebook B in A Mode of 2in1 (and vice versa).

**Prefer Chaku-moji**

You can set how your FOMA phone works for incoming Chaku-moji messages for when "Setting when opened" is set to "Answer".

## 1 Service ▶ Chaku-moji ▶ Prefer Chaku-moji ▶ ON or OFF

- ON** . . . . Does not answer by opening the FOMA phone during ringing, so you can check a Chaku-moji message.
- OFF** . . . . Answers by opening the FOMA phone during ringing.

<Pause Dial>

MENU 8 4

## Sending Touch-tone Signals

You can send touch-tone signals from your FOMA phone to use services such as reserving tickets, checking bank balance, etc.






### Store Pause Dial

You need to store a number string to be sent as a touch-tone signal in the Pause Dial list. If you have inserted a pause (p), you can send a number string breaking at the point where the pause is inserted.

1  Settings > Other settings > Pause dial >  

- When a number string is already stored, it is displayed.
- To delete a stored pause dial, press  (FUNC) and select "Delete", then select "YES".




### 2 Enter a number string.

- Enter the pause (p) by pressing and holding  for at least one second.
- You can use only  through , ,  to enter a number string and the pause (p).
- You can enter up to 128 digits.
- You cannot enter a pause (p) at the beginning and end of a number string, or enter it consecutively.

### Send Pause Dial




1  Settings > Other settings > Pause dial >    
> Enter a phone number >  or  

A voice call is made. Once the line is connected, a number string stored in Pause Dial is displayed up to the first pause (p).


- When the other party's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, you can retrieve it selecting from the Search Phonebook display by pressing .
- You can search for the phone number also from Received Calls by pressing  or from Redial by pressing .

## 2 Check that the line is connected > or

A number string up to the first pause (p) is sent, and a number string up to the next pause (p) is displayed.

A number string up to the pause (p) is sent each time you press  or  .

When you have finished sending the last number, the "Talking" display appears.

- To send multiple pieces of a number string at a time, press and hold  for at least one second, and select "Send at one time".

### Information

- During a call, you can send a number string also by displaying the Function menu of the Pause Dial display.
- Some devices on the receiving end cannot receive signals.
- You cannot send a number string with pauses during a videophone call.

## &lt;WORLD CALL&gt;




## International Calls

**WORLD CALL** is the international call service available from DoCoMo mobile phones.

When you have signed up for FOMA service, you have contracted to use “WORLD CALL” (except those who have applied not to use it).

- You can call about 240 countries and regions.
- The WORLD CALL charges are added to your monthly FOMA bill.
- The application/monthly fee is free of charge.
- Changes in procedures for international call
  - “My Line” service is not available for mobile communications such as mobile phones, so cannot be used with WORLD CALL. However, in conjunction with the launch of “My Line” service, the dialing procedure for international calls from mobile phones has changed. Note that the old way of dialing (the way without “010” from the operation of “Enter a Phone Number to Make an International Call”) no longer works.
- The service is not available with some billing plans.
- Contact “DoCoMo Information Center” on the back page of this manual for inquiries about WORLD CALL.
- When using international carriers other than DoCoMo, contact them.

## About international videophone calls


You can make international videophone calls to the other party who uses a specific 3G mobile phone overseas. Press  instead of  or  in the steps of “Enter a Phone Number to Make an International Call”. (See page 60)

- For the information about connectable countries and telecommunications carriers, refer to the DoCoMo Global Service web page.
- Images sent from the other party may blur on your FOMA phone or you may not be able to connect, depending on the other party’s phone used for the international videophone call.


## Enter a Phone Number to Make an International Call

**1** Enter numbers in order of 009130→010→country code→area code (city code)→destination phone number



- When the area code (city code) begins with “0”, enter it except for the “0”. However, include “0” when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy.
- Press  to make an international videophone call.

## Use “+” to Make an International Call

When you enter a phone number for dialing or storing it in the Phonebook, press and hold  for at least one second to enter “+”. You can use “+” to make international calls without entering an international call access code such as 009130-010.


- If you set “Auto assist setting” of “Int'l dial assist” to “ON”, an international call access code of “IDD prefix setting” is automatically entered.

**1**  (for at least one second)

▶ Enter numbers in order of country code

→ area code (city code)→ destination phone number



- When the area code (city code) begins with “0”, enter it except for the “0”. However, include “0” when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy.
- Press  to make an international videophone call.
- When you select “Dial with orig. No.”, you can make a call without adding an international call access code.

## International Dial Assist

You can make a call adding a country code or international call access code to a phone number. (Except for some countries and regions, if the phone number starts with "0", the "0" at the beginning is automatically deleted.)

**1** Enter a phone number  
or

bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

**2** **FUNC** ▶ Int'l dial assist ▶ Select a country name  
▶ Select a name ▶ or **Dial**

- Press **Phone** to make an international videophone call.
- When the beginning of the phone number is "+", you can select only an international call access code.
- When "Japan" is selected as a country name, the display for selecting a name is not displayed.

<International Dial Assist>

## Setting for International Calls

### Auto Assist Setting

You can set whether to replace "+" at the beginning of a phone number with an international call access code for when you make an international call from Japan.

**1** ▶ Settings ▶ Network setting ▶ Int'l dial assist  
▶ Auto assist setting ▶ ON or OFF  
▶ Select a country name ▶ Select a name.

- When no country code or international call access code is stored, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store it. Select "YES" and go to step 2 of "Country Code Setting" on page 61 for a country code, and go to step 2 of "IDD Prefix Setting" on page 61 for an international call access code.

## Country Code Setting

You can store up to 27 country codes to be added for making international calls from overseas.

**1** ▶ Settings ▶ Network setting ▶ Int'l dial assist  
▶ Country Code set.  
▶ Highlight <Not recorded> and press **Edit**.

- If you select a stored country name, you can check the stored contents.

**2** Enter a country name ▶ Enter a country code.

- You can enter a country name of up to 8 full-pitch/16 half-pitch characters.
- You can enter a country code of up to 5 digits. But you cannot use #, \*, and +.

## IDD Prefix Setting

You can store up to three international call access codes to be added to the beginning of a phone number for making an international call.

**1** ▶ Settings ▶ Network setting ▶ Int'l dial assist  
▶ IDD prefix setting  
▶ Highlight <Not recorded> and press **Edit**.

- If you select the stored item, you can check the stored contents.

**2** Enter a name ▶ Enter an international call access code.

- You can enter a name of up to 8 full-pitch/16 half-pitch characters.
- You can enter an international call access code of up to 16 digits.

## Function Menu while Country Code Setting/IDD Prefix Setting is Displayed

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Edit	Go to step 2 of "Country Code Setting" on page 61 for Country Code Setting, and go to step 2 of "IDD Prefix Setting" on page 61 for IDD Prefix Setting. • You can edit the item also by pressing <b>Edit</b> .

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Delete this	▶ YES
Delete all	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

### Information

<Delete this> <Delete all>

- You cannot delete the country code or international call access code set by "Auto assist setting".

<Prefix Setting>

## Storing Numbers to be Added to the Beginning of a Phone Number

You can store prefix numbers such as international call access codes or "186"/"184" and add them to the phone number for dialing. You can store up to seven prefix numbers.

1 ▶ Settings ▶ Network setting ▶ Prefix setting  
▶ Highlight <Not recorded> and press (Edit).

- If you select a stored prefix, you can check the stored contents.
- To delete a stored prefix, press and select "Delete this" or "Delete all" then select "YES". If you select "Delete all", you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.

2 Enter a name ▶ Enter a prefix number.

- You can enter a name of up to 8 full-pitch/16 half-pitch characters.
- You can enter a prefix number of up to 16 digits. The keys for entry are limited to through , and .

### Prefix Numbers

You can add a prefix number to the beginning of phone number when you make a call.

1 Enter a phone number  
or

bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

2 (FUNC) ▶ Prefix numbers ▶ Select a name  
▶ or (Dial)

- Press (V. phone) to make a videophone call and press to make a PushTalk call.
- For making a PushTalk call, adding a prefix number such as "186" or "184" to the beginning of the phone number is disabled.

<Sub-address Setting>

## Making a Call with Specified Sub-address

You can set whether to regard the numbers after "X" of a phone number as a sub-address to access the specified phones or data terminals.

- The sub-address is a number assigned to identify each ISDN terminal connected to an ISDN line. It is also used for selecting contents on "V-live".

1 ▶ Settings ▶ Other settings ▶ Sub-address setting  
▶ ON or OFF

### Information

- Even if you set "Sub-address setting" to "ON", "X" at the top of phone numbers and "X" immediately after the prefix number or "186"/"184" are not regarded as sub-address mark-off symbols.

<Reconnect Signal>

## Setting Alarm for Reconnecting

You can set an alarm that sounds until a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk communication is reconnected after disconnected owing to bad radio wave conditions.

1 ▶ Settings ▶ Talk ▶ Reconnect signal  
▶ Select an alarm.



### Information

- The reconnectable time differs depending on the usage status and radio wave conditions. An estimate is about 10 seconds and the call charge is applied also for that duration.
- While you are disconnected, no sound is transmitted to the other party.

### <Voice Clear Setting>

## Adjusting Voice According to Surrounding Noise

The volume of the other party's voice is turned up according to the surrounding noise during a call. During the other party's voice is hearing from the earpiece, this setting is effective.

1  Settings ▶ Talk ▶ Voice clear setting ▶ ON or OFF

### <Noise Reduction>

## Reducing Surrounding Noise to Make Voice Clear



The noise sending to the other party is reduced according to the surrounding noise during a call.

1  Settings ▶ Talk ▶ Noise reduction ▶ ON or OFF


### <Hands-free>

## Switching to Hands-free

When you switch to Hands-free, sound such as the other party's voice is audible over the speaker.

1 During a call, dialing, or connecting 

When Hands-free is activated,  is displayed.

- Press  again to deactivate Hands-free.
- The sound volume during a Hands-free call follows the setting specified by "Volume" (earpiece volume).
- You can switch to Hands-free even during Manner Mode. Also, you will still hear voice through the speaker even when you activate Manner Mode during a Hands-free call.

### Information

- While the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, you cannot hear voice through the speaker even if you switch to Hands-free.
- Keep the FOMA phone well away from your ear during a Hands-free call. Otherwise you could affect or damage your hearing.
- Talk into the FOMA phone within a distance of about 50 cm.

### <In-Car Hands-free>

## Using Hands-free Compatible Devices

You can make or receive voice calls from a Hands-free compatible device such as In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (option) or a car navigation system by connecting with your FOMA phone.

You can connect your FOMA phone to a Hands-free compatible device using two ways of connections as follows:

#### • Connect using a cable (USB connection):




To use/charge via the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (option), you need to have the FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (option).

#### • Connect using Bluetooth (wireless):

To connect to a Bluetooth communication compatible Hands-free device, you need to register and connect it to the FOMA phone.

※ For how to operate Hands-free compatible devices, refer to the respective instruction manuals.

### Information

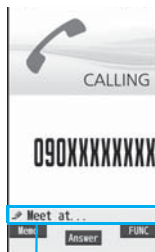
- To connect using a cable (USB connection), set "USB mode setting" to "Communication mode".
-  appears while you are talking or communicating using a USB Hands-free compatible device.
-  might appear while the FOMA phone is connected to a USB Hands-free compatible device, and  while "USB mode setting" is set to "microSD mode", depending on the Hands-free device connected.
- The display or ring tone for incoming calls follows the settings of the FOMA phone.
- When the sound is set to output from a Hands-free compatible device, the ring tone sounds from that device even when Manner Mode is activated or "Ring volume" of the FOMA phone is set to "Silent".
- The receiving operation in Public Mode (Drive Mode) works in accordance with the "Public (Drive) mode" setting.

**Information**

- The receiving operation while Record Message is activated works in accordance with the "Record message setting" setting.
- When the sound is set to output from the FOMA phone, the FOMA phone works in accordance with "Setting when closed" if it is closed during a call. When the sound is set to output from a Hands-free device, the communication state does not change regardless of "Setting when closed" even if you close the FOMA phone.

**Receiving a Call/Videophone Call****1 When you receive a call, the ring tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator flickers.**

- To vibrate the FOMA phone for incoming calls, set "Phone" or "Videophone" of "Vibrator" to other than "OFF".
- When receiving a videophone call, "Incoming V.phone" is displayed.
- "111" is displayed at the upper left of the phone number for incoming international calls.

Chaku-moji message  
(See page 57)**2 For Answering a Voice Call**

Press or (**Answer**) to answer the call.

**For Answering a Videophone Call**

Press or (**Answer**) to answer the videophone call.

You can send the image through your camera to the other party. Press (**Subst.**) to take a videophone call, and the substitute image is sent to the other party.

(Substitute image answering)


- Press during a call to switch between the image through your camera and substitute image for sending to the other party.

**3 Press to end the call after talking.****Information**

- If you close the FOMA phone during a call, the FOMA phone works in accordance with the setting of "Setting when closed". (See page 67)
- You might hear beeps (in-call ring tone) during a call. If you have signed up for any of Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, or Call Forwarding Service and set "Arrival call act" to "Answer", the beeps (in-call ring tone) will sound for another incoming call, enabling you to do the following operations:
  - Voice Mail Service
    - ... Transfer the call to the Voice Mail Service Center. (See page 447)
  - Call Waiting Service
    - ... Put your current call on hold and answer the incoming call. (See page 448)
  - Call Forwarding Service
    - ... Transfer the call to the registered forwarding destination. (See page 451)
- You can set "Reject unknown" not to accept calls from the phone numbers not stored in the Phonebook.
- You cannot answer a call in Horizontal Open Style. However, when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, you can answer a call in Horizontal Open Style.

## Information

### <For Voice Calls>

- When “Answer setting” is set to “Any key answer”, the call is placed on hold if you answer the call by pressing  with the FOMA phone closed. If you have set “Setting when closed” to “No tone” or “End the call”, the other party hears nothing, and if you have set “Setting when closed” to “Tone on”, the call hold tone is played back. You can start talking by opening the FOMA phone.


### <For Videophone Calls>

- Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated during a videophone call as “Hands-free w/ V. phone” has been set to “ON”. (See page 77) However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of “Hands-free w/ V. phone”.
- Even if Call Forwarding Service is set to “Activate”, the call is not forwarded unless the forwarding destination is a phone compatible with the videophone conforming to 3G-324M (see page 50). Check the phone you are forwarding the call to and then activate the service. The videophone caller does not hear the guidance to the effect that the call is forwarded. (The message to the effect that the call is to be forwarded appears, depending on the receiver’s FOMA phone.)
- If a videophone call comes in from the phone number to be rejected by Nuisance Call Blocking Service, the video guidance for Call Rejection is played back and the call is disconnected.
- You can send a Chara-den image to the other party instead of the image through your camera. (See page 74)

## Display for incoming calls

### When a caller’s phone number is provided

If you store the caller’s name, phone number, and image in the Phonebook, the name, phone number, and icon (or image) are displayed.

- If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name that comes first in the search order (see page 98) is displayed.
- The phone number but not the name is displayed during Personal Data Lock.
- For a forwarded call, the forwarder’s phone number is displayed below the caller. (It might not be displayed in the case of some forwarders.)
- When you receive a call to an additional number of Multi Number, the stored name for the additional number is displayed below the caller. (With a forwarded call, you can press  (Change) to switch to display of the forwarder.)

### When a caller’s phone number is not provided

The reason for no caller ID is displayed. (See page 144)

## Function Menu while a Call is Ringing

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Call rejection	You can disconnect the call without answering.
Call forwarding	See page 451.
Voice mail	See page 447.

## Switched between a Voice Call and Videophone Call by the Other Party

When you have set “Notify switchable mode” to “Indication ON”, the caller (the other party) can switch between a voice call and videophone call.

- You (receiving end) cannot switch between a voice call and videophone call.

## Switched from a Voice Call to Videophone Call by the Other Party

### 1 The display for switching to a videophone call appears during a voice call.

**YES** . . . Sends the image through your camera to the caller.

**NO** . . . Sends a pre-installed substitute image to the caller.

- While switching, the message to that effect is displayed and the voice guidance is played back.







## Switched from a Videophone Call to Voice Call by the Other Party

When the caller (the other party) switches a videophone call to a voice call, the message telling that the call is being switched appears, the voice guidance is played back, and then the call is switched to a voice call.

&lt;Answer Setting&gt;

MENU 5 8























## Setting Response of Key Operation for Answering Incoming Calls




You can set to start talking (Any key answer) or to stop the ring tone (Quick silent) by pressing a key besides , ,  (for videophone call), or  (for PushTalk call) for when a call or PushTalk call comes in.

### 1 Settings ▶ Incoming call ▶ Answer setting ▶ Select a key operation.

#### Any key answer

You can start talking by pressing any key shown below:


























Voice call※1	 ,  ,  through  ,  ,  ,  ,  ,  ※2,  , 
PushTalk call	 ,  ,  ,  through  ,  ,  ,  ,  ,  , 





- When receiving a videophone call, you can start talking by pressing ,  or .

#### Quick silent

The following are the keys you can press to stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance:









When "Setting when opened" is set to "Keep ringing", you can open the FOMA phone in Normal Style to stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance. Even if you stop it, the other party hears a calling tone.


Voice call※1	 through  ,  ,  ,  ,  ,  ※2,  , 
Videophone call	 through  ,  ,  ,  ,  ※2,  , 
PushTalk call	 through  ,  ,  ,  ,  ,  , 

- After you stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance, you can start talking by pressing , ,  (for videophone call), or  (for PushTalk call).

#### OFF

You can start talking by pressing a key shown below:

Voice call	 , 
Videophone call	 ,  , 
PushTalk call	 ,  , 

- ※1 You can activate the any key answer or quick silent also by pressing  when five record messages have already been recorded.
- ※2 While "Change" is displayed, you cannot start talking or stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance.

#### Information

- While the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, you can press the switch to start talking, regardless of "Answer setting". (See page 424)

&lt;Setting when Opened&gt;

## Setting Response for when Opening FOMA Phone during Ringing

### 1 Settings ▶ Incoming call ▶ Setting when opened ▶ Select an incoming type ▶ Keep ringing or Answer

#### Information

- If you receive a videophone call with "Answer" set, the still image set for "Substitute image" of "Select image" is sent to the other party.
- You cannot answer calls by opening the FOMA phone in Horizontal Open Style even when "Answer" is set.

&lt;Setting when Closed&gt;

MENU 1 8


## Setting Response for when Closing FOMA Phone during a Call

### Set Response for when Closing FOMA Phone during a Voice Call/Videophone Call

#### 1 Settings ▶ Talk ▶ Setting when closed ▶ Phone/Videophone ▶ Select an item.

**No tone** . . . . . The voice is muted. The hold tone does not sound. The setting is completed.

**Tone on** . . . . . The other party hears the hold tone set for "Holding tone" of "Set hold tone" while the FOMA phone is closed.

**End the call** . . . The call is finished. This is the same operation as pressing  during a call. The setting is completed.

#### 2 **Speaker ON or Speaker OFF**

**Speaker ON** . . . . The hold tone sounds from the speaker.

**Speaker OFF** . . . The hold tone does not sound from the speaker.

### Set Response for when Closing FOMA Phone during PushTalk

#### 1 Settings ▶ Talk ▶ Setting when closed ▶ PushTalk ▶ Speaker call or End the call

#### Information

- This function is disabled when you set "Headset mic. setting" to "Headset microphone" and the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected. The communication state does not change even if you close the FOMA phone during a voice call or PushTalk communication. If you close the FOMA phone during a videophone call, the substitute image is sent to the other party with the line connected.
- If you close the FOMA phone during a videophone call with "No tone" activated, a substitute image is sent to the other party. When "Tone on" is set, the still image set for "Holding" of "Select image" is sent.

#### Information






- If you set to "No tone" or "Tone on", "Holding" is displayed on the Private window when the FOMA phone is closed.
- Even when "End the call" has been set, the call does not end if you close your FOMA phone from Horizontal Open Style. "No tone" works for a voice call/videophone call, and "Speaker call" works for a PushTalk call.

&lt;Volume&gt;

## Adjusting Earpiece Volume

#### 1 Settings ▶ Talk ▶ Volume ▶ Use or to adjust the earpiece volume.

Adjust the earpiece volume to Level 1 (minimum) through Level 6 (maximum).

- During a call, PushTalk call, or calling, you can press  or  to adjust the volume, and while entering phone number, you can press and hold  (for at least one second) to adjust it. Press  or  within two seconds to adjust it.

#### Information

- The earpiece volume adjusted during a call is retained even after the call ends.
- When you adjust the earpiece volume, the sound volume during a Hands-free call or speaker call for PushTalk is also adjusted.

&lt;Ring Volume&gt;

MENU 5 0

## Adjusting Ring Volume

You can adjust the ring volume for incoming calls and mail.

- 1 **Settings** ▶ **Sound** ▶ **Ring volume**  
▶ **Select an incoming type**  
▶ **Use to adjust the volume.**

- Following icons are displayed on the Stand-by display while the ring volume is set to "Silent":

: The ring volume for voice calls, PushTalk calls or videophone calls is "Silent".

: The ring volume for mail, chat mail, or Messages R/F is "Silent".

: The ring volume for voice calls, PushTalk calls, or videophone calls is "Silent" and the ring volume for mail, chat mail, or Messages R/F is "Silent".

- If you have set "Step", the ring tone is silent for about three seconds, and then the volume steps up every three seconds, from Level 1 through Level 6.

- During ringing of a voice call or videophone call, you can adjust the ring volume also by pressing or by pressing and holding for at least one second.

However, you cannot adjust the ring volume in the following cases:

- When Ring Volume is set to "Step"
- When "Answer setting" is set to "Quick silent" and you stop the ring tone or voice guidance
- During Manner Mode
- When a call is cut off within the ring start time specified by "Ring time"

&lt;On Hold&gt;

## Putting an Incoming Call on Hold when You cannot Answer at Once

- 1 **During ringing** ▶

The FOMA phone makes three rapid beeps for confirmation and the call is put on answer-hold (On Hold).

- The confirmation tone does not sound during Manner Mode or when "Ring volume" is "Silent".
- The other party hears the hold tone set for "On hold tone" of "Set hold tone". For videophone calls, the still image set for "On hold" of "Select image" is displayed.

- 2 **Press or (Answer) to release hold and answer the call.**

- If "Answer setting" is set to "Any key answer", you can release hold of voice calls by pressing any key of through , , , , , , , , , or .

- If a videophone call is on hold, the image through your camera is sent to the other party by pressing or (Answer) to release hold. If you press (Subst) to release hold, the substitute image is sent.

### Information

- The caller is charged for the call even during answer-hold (On Hold).
- If you press during answer-hold (On Hold), the call will be disconnected.

&lt;Holding&gt;

## Putting a Call on Hold during a Call

- 1 **During a call** ▶ (Hold)

- The other party hears the hold tone set for "Holding tone" of "Set hold tone". For videophone calls, the still image set for "Holding" of "Select image" is displayed.
- You can put the call on hold by closing the FOMA phone during the call if you have set "Setting when closed" to "Tone on".

## 2 Press or (Answer) to release hold and answer the call.

- If a videophone call is on hold, the image through your camera is sent to the other party by pressing or (Answer) to release hold. If you press (Subst) to release hold, the substitute image is sent.
- If you have set "Setting when closed" to "Tone on" and put the call on hold by closing the FOMA phone, open the FOMA phone or connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) to answer the call. If you connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch to answer the videophone call, the substitute image is sent to the other party.

### Information

- The caller is charged for the call even while the call is on hold.
- If a new call comes in while the current call is put on hold, the hold (Holding) is released.

<Set Hold Tone>

## Setting Hold Tone

You can set the guidance the other party hears during on hold.

- 1 ► Settings ► Talk ► Set hold tone  
► On hold tone or Holding tone ► Select a hold tone.

**Tone 1/2** . . . The caller hears the pre-installed guidance in Japanese.

**JESU JOY OF MAN'S**

. . . . . The caller hears the melody. You can set this for "Holding tone" only.

**Voice announce**

. . . . . The caller hears the sound recorded by "Voice announce". If it has not been recorded, this is not displayed.

- Press (Play) to play back a hold tone. Press (CLR) to end the demo playback.

<Public Mode (Drive Mode)>

## Using Public Mode (Drive Mode)

**Public Mode is an auto-answer service that puts importance on manners in public spaces. Once you activate Public Mode, the guidance is played back telling that you cannot answer the call as you are currently driving or in a place (a train, bus, movie theater, etc.) where you should refrain from answering the call. Then the call is disconnected.**

- 1 Press and hold for at least one second.

Public Mode is activated and "" is displayed.

When a call comes in, the guidance "The person you are calling is currently driving or in an area where cell phone should not be used. Please try again later." is played back for incoming calls.

- To deactivate Public Mode, perform the same operation. Then, Public Mode is deactivated and "" disappears.

### Information

- You can activate/deactivate Public Mode only from the Stand-by display. You can activate/deactivate Public Mode even when "" is displayed.
- You can make calls as usual even during Public Mode.
- If you make an emergency call at 110/119/118, Public Mode is released.
- When Public Mode and Manner Mode are activated simultaneously, Public Mode has priority.
- If a "User unset" call comes in while "Caller ID request" is set to "Activate", the Caller ID Request guidance is played back. (The Public Mode guidance is not played back.)
- You cannot use this function during data communication.

## When Public Mode (Drive Mode) is activated

- Even when a call comes in, the ring tone does not sound. The "Missed call" icon appears on the display and the call is stored in "Received calls". The guidance is played back to the caller to the effect that you are currently driving or in an area where mobile phones should not be used. Then the call is disconnected. When a PushTalk call comes in, no answer is made and the message "Connection failed" appears on the caller's display. For the talk among three or more members, the message to the effect that you are driving is conveyed to them.
- However, when the power is off or "🚫" is displayed, the caller hears the out-of-service area guidance instead of the Public Mode guidance.
- The ring tone does not sound and the Call/Charging indicator does not flicker even when mail or a message comes in. In addition, the set vibrator does not work.
- The ring tone for 64K data communication, alarm tone, and charging confirmation tone do not sound, and a melody while an i-appli program is running is not played back.
- The tickers of i-Channel are not displayed.
- See page 70 for how Public Mode (Drive Mode) and each network service work for incoming calls when they are simultaneously activated.

## <Public Mode (Power Off)>

### Using Public Mode (Power Off)

**Public Mode (Power Off) is an auto-answer service that puts importance on manners in public spaces. Once you activate Public Mode (Power Off), the guidance is played back telling that you cannot answer the call as you are currently in a place (hospital, airplane, around priority seat in a train, etc.) where use is prohibited. Then the call is disconnected.**

#### 1 Enter "✖25251"▶

Public Mode (Power Off) is set. (Nothing is changed on the Stand-by display.) After setting Public Mode (Power Off) and turning off the power, the guidance "The person you are calling is currently in an area where use is prohibited. Please try again later." is played back for incoming calls.

- To release Public Mode (Power Off), dial "✖25250".
- To check the setting for Public Mode (Power Off), dial "✖25259".

## When Public Mode (Power Off) is activated

- The setting stays activated until you dial "✖25250" to deactivate Public Mode (Power Off). You cannot deactivate the setting just by turning on the power.
- The guidance is played back to the caller telling that you are currently in a place where you should turn off the power. Then the call is disconnected. When a PushTalk call comes in, no answer is made and the message "Connection failed" appears on the caller's display. For the talk among three or more members, the message to the effect that you do not participate is conveyed to them.
- The Public Mode (Power Off) guidance is played back even when you are out of the service area or out of reach of radio waves.
- See page 70 for how Public Mode (Power Off) and each network service work for incoming calls when they are simultaneously activated.

### ■ The receiving operation during Public Mode (Drive Mode/Power Off)

Service	Responses to Incoming Voice Calls	Responses to Incoming Videophone Calls
Voice Mail Service <sup>※</sup>	Plays back the Public Mode guidance, and then the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.	Does not play back the video guidance for Public Mode, and the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.
Call Forwarding Service	Plays back the Public Mode guidance, and then the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination. Whether the guidance is played back or not depends on the guidance setting of Call Forwarding Service. If "Plays guidance" is set, plays back the Public Mode guidance. If "Does not play guidance" is set, does not play back the guidance.	Does not play back the video guidance for Public Mode, and the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination. If the destination does not support videophone calls, the call is disconnected.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	For the call from the phone number registered to be rejected, plays back the Call Rejection guidance, and then the call is disconnected.	For the call from the phone number registered to be rejected, plays back the video guidance for Call Rejection, and then the call is disconnected.




Service	Responses to Incoming Voice Calls	Responses to Incoming Videophone Calls
Caller ID Display Request Service	For the caller without a caller ID, plays back the Caller ID Request guidance, and then the call is disconnected. For the caller with a caller ID, plays back the Public Mode guidance, and then the call is disconnected.	For the caller without a caller ID, plays back the video guidance for Caller ID Request, and then the call is disconnected. For the caller with a caller ID, plays back the video guidance for Public Mode, and then the call is disconnected.

※ When the ring time is set to 0 seconds, the FOMA phone is out of the service area, or the power is off, the Public Mode guidance is not played back, but Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service works. Note that in this case the call is not notified by the "Missed call" icon and not stored in "Received calls".

## <Missed Calls>

### If You could not Answer an Incoming Call

When you could not answer calls (Missed calls), the "Notification icon" appears on the Stand-by display. You can check Received Calls by selecting the icon.

- 
  - Press or to return to the former display.
  - When multiple icons are found, use to highlight an icon and press .
  - You cannot select the icon even when you press when the Stand-by display appears on the horizontal display.
  - See page 32 for when the FOMA phone is closed.

## <Record Message Setting>

MENU 5 5

### Recording Voice/Video Messages when You cannot Answer the Call

By activating Record Message, you can play back an answer message to incoming calls and record callers' voice/video messages when you cannot answer them even if you have not signed up for Voice Mail Service.

You can record up to five messages for voice calls and up to two messages for videophone calls. Each message can be recorded for up to 20 seconds.

### Activate Record Message

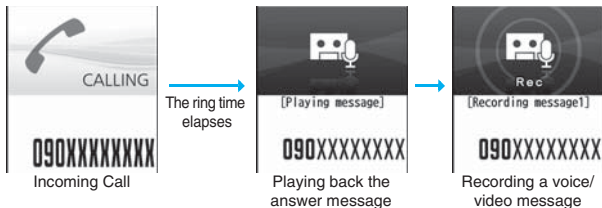
- LifeKit ▶ Rec. msg/voice memo  
 ▶ Record message setting ▶ ON or OFF  
 ▶ Select an answer message.

- Press to play back the answer message. Press to end the demo playback.
- When "Japanese 1", "Japanese 2", or "English" is set, a beep sounds after playing back the answer message to the other party. If "Voice announce" is set, the beep does not sound.

### 2 Enter a ring time (seconds).

- Enter from "000" through "120" in three digits.
- You cannot set the same ring time for Remote Monitoring, Auto Answer Setting and Record Message Setting. Set a different time for each.
- While Record Message is activated, " 0"~" 5" (the number of recorded messages for voice calls) and " 0"~" 2" (the number of recorded messages for videophone calls) are displayed.

## Incoming calls when Record Message Setting is set to "ON"

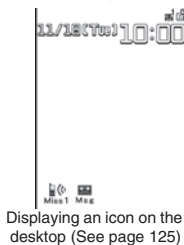


For videophone calls, the still image set for "Preparing" of "Select image" is displayed on the other party's display while playing back the answer message, and the still image set for "Record message" of "Select image" is displayed while recording.

- To answer a call when the answer message is played back or a voice/video message is recorded, press or (Answer).

For videophone calls, press or to send the image through your camera, or press (Subst) to send a substitute image.

You can answer a call also by pressing the switch on the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option). For videophone calls, the image through your camera is sent to the other party.



Displaying an icon on the desktop (See page 125)

## Information

- Record Message does not work when is displayed.
- When Public Mode (Drive Mode) and Record Message are simultaneously activated, the former has priority and the latter does not work.
- The priority order of answer messages is as follows: "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Record message setting".
- If "Voice announcement" selected as an answer message is deleted, the answer message will be set to "Japanese 1".

## Information

- When Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set at the same time as Record Message, the priority depends on the ring time set for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. To give Record Message priority, set the ring time for Record Message Setting shorter than that for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. Even when you do this, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service works if there are already five record messages for voice calls and two record messages for videophone calls.
- You cannot receive a call from a third party while a voice/video message is being recorded. The third party will hear the busy tone.

## &lt;Quick Record Message&gt;

## Recording Voice/Video Messages when You cannot Answer the Call during Ringing

Even if a call comes in while Record Message is not activated, you can record the caller's voice/video message just for that incoming call.

## 1 During ringing (Memo) or

Manner Mode is also activated.

The caller will hear the answer message and then can leave you a voice/video message.

- Record Message does not work when five messages for voice calls and two messages for videophone calls have already been recorded or when a PushTalk call comes in. Only Manner Mode is set when you operate by pressing .
- When "Side keys guard" is set to "ON", you cannot activate Record Message or Manner Mode by pressing with the FOMA phone closed.

<Play/Erase Messages>  
<Play/Erase Videophone Messages>

MENU 5 5

## Playing Back/Erasing Record Messages/a Voice Memo/Videophone Record Messages/Movie Memos

### Play Back/Erase Record Messages/a Voice Memo

1 MENU ▶ LifeKit ▶ Rec. msg/voice memo

▶ Play/Erase msg.

▶ Select a record message or voice memo.



A beep sounds and playback starts.

- On the Record Message list, recorded items are indicated by "★".
- It is played back at the volume set for "Volume" (earpiece volume).
- When playback ends, a double-beep sounds and the message "Playing" is cleared from the display.
- The date and time the message/memo was recorded are displayed during playback. When a caller's phone number is provided, it is displayed. If the caller is stored in the Phonebook, his/her name is also displayed. However, the name is not displayed and the phone number only is displayed in the following cases:
  - When you play back a record message from the caller stored as secret data in Normal Mode
  - When you play back a record message for Number A in B Mode (or vice versa) while using 2in1
- If the caller's phone number is displayed during playback, you can make a voice call to that phone number by pressing . Press to make a videophone call and press to make a PushTalk call.

#### To play back using

From the Stand-by display on the vertical display, press to play back the latest record message. When record messages are not recorded, a voice memo is played back.

#### To skip to next message

Each time you press during playback, messages are played back in the following order: the next new record message → the oldest record message → a voice memo.

#### To cancel playback midway

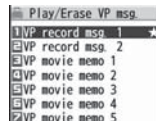
Press (Stop) or (CLR).

### Play Back/Erase Videophone Record Messages/Movie Memos

1 MENU ▶ LifeKit ▶ Rec. msg/voice memo

▶ Play/Erase VP msg.

▶ Select a videophone record message or movie memo.



- On the Videophone Record Message list, recorded items are indicated by "★".
- It is played back at the same volume of the playback sound of i-motion movies.
- The date and time the message/memo was recorded are displayed during playback.

#### To play back using

From the Stand-by display on the vertical display, press and hold for at least one second to play back the latest videophone record message. When videophone record messages are not recorded, the latest movie memo is played back.

#### To cancel playback midway

Press (Stop) or (CLR).

### Function Menu of the Record Message List/Videophone Record Message List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Play	You can play back a message.
Erase this	<p>▶ YES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You can erase a message/memo also by pressing  (Erase) during playback.</li></ul>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Erase rec. msg.</b>	You can erase all record messages from the Record Message list, and can erase all videophone record messages from the Videophone Record Message list. ▶ YES
<b>Erase movie memo</b> [Videophone Record Message list only]	You can erase all movie memos. ▶ YES
<b>Erase all</b>	You can erase all record messages and a voice memo from the Record Message list, and can erase all videophone record messages and movie memos from the Videophone Record Message list. ▶ YES

## Using Chara-den


You can perform the setting for sending a Chara-den image to the other party.




- See page 349 for Chara-den images.

### Set by Call

You can set a Chara-den image to be sent to the other party for making a videophone call.

#### 1 Chara-den display/Chara-den list ▶ (V. phone)

Enter the destination phone number and press  (V. phone) to make a videophone call.

- When the other party's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, you can retrieve it selecting from the Search Phonebook display by pressing .
- You can search for the phone number also from Received Calls by pressing  or from Redial by pressing .


#### Information

- The priority order of substitute images to be sent to the other party is as follows: "Setting by call" → "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Select image".

## Substitute Image

You can set a Chara-den image for "Substitute image" of "Select image".

### 1 Chara-den display/Chara-den list/Chara-den Recording display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Substitute image







- From the Chara-den list, you can set it also by pressing  (Subst.).

## Chara-den Setup

You can perform settings for a Chara-den call. These settings are effective only for during a videophone call.

### 1 During a Chara-den call ▶ (FUNC)

- ▶ Chara-den setup ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Switch Chara-den</b>	▶ Select a Chara-den image. • If you switch Chara-den images, the action mode switches to Whole Action Mode.
<b>Action list</b>	You can display the list for actions that you can operate. • Highlight an action and press  (Select) to execute the action. Press  (Detail) to check the details of the action. • You can display the Action list also by pressing  .
<b>Change action</b>	You can switch the action mode between Whole Action Mode (  ) and Parts Action Mode (  ). • You can switch modes also by pressing  .
<b>SW substitute img.</b>	You can switch a substitute image to be sent to the other party to the still image set for "Pre-installed" of "Select image".
<b>SW org. subst. img.</b>	You can switch a substitute image to be sent to the other party to the still image set for "Original" of "Select image".

## Useful Functions for Videophone Calls

### Switching Cameras

At videophone start-up | Inside camera

You can switch images to be sent to the other party from through the inside camera to through the outside camera.

#### 1 During a videophone call ▶ (Change) (OUT)

- Press (Change) (IN) again to switch to the image through the inside camera.
- The setting here is effective only for the current videophone call.

### Send Substitute Images

You can switch images to be sent to the other party from the image through your camera to the still image or Chara-den image set as the substitute image.

See page 349 for Chara-den.

#### 1 During a videophone call ▶ (MENU) (Subst.)

The substitute image is sent to the other party.

"Subst." is displayed while the still substitute image is being sent, and "Subst." is displayed if you have set a Chara-den image as a substitute image (during a Chara-den call).

- Press (MENU) (Subst.) again to switch from the substitute image to the image through your camera.

### Information

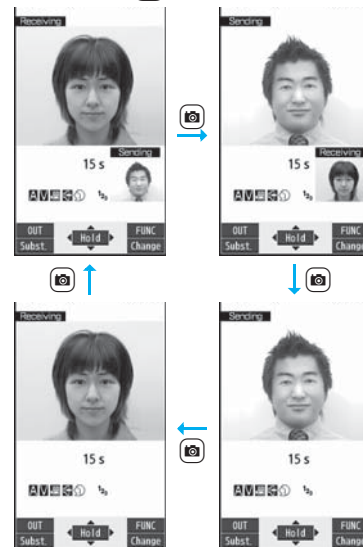
- The priority order of substitute images to be sent to the other party is as follows: "Setting by call" → "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Select image". Note that "Setting for Phonebook entry" and "Group setting" are disabled when a videophone call comes in without notifying the caller ID.
- Even when you make a videophone call sending a substitute image, you are charged for the digital communication.

### Switch Image Display Positions

You can switch the display locations of the receiving image and the sending image.

#### 1 During a videophone call, press (Change) (Change).

- Each time you press (Change) (Change), the displays switch.



## Zoom

At videophone start-up	Wide
------------------------	------

You can adjust the magnification for the camera image to be sent to the other party. During a videophone call, the maximum magnification is about 3.3 times for the inside camera and about 5.5 times for the outside camera.

## 1 During a videophone call

▶ Use  to adjust the magnification.

- The former zoom setting returns when the videophone call ends.

## Function Menu during Videophone Call

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>CHG to voice call</b>	See page 53.
<b>Talk on BT/Phone</b>	You can set whether to communicate through the FOMA phone or a Bluetooth device. (See page 430)
<b>Send DTMF tone/ DTMF tone OFF</b>	<p>During a Chara-den call, you can switch to the DTMF Transmission Mode that enables you to enter the data from the numeric keys and to send DTMF (touch-tone signals). You can operate it only during a Chara-den call.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "Send DTMF tone" is displayed when the mode is not DTMF Transmission Mode and "DTMF tone OFF" is displayed in DTMF Transmission Mode.</li> <li>• In DTMF Transmission Mode, you cannot operate the action of Chara-den images.</li> <li>• The DTMF tone may not be received depending on the device of a receiving end.</li> </ul>
<b>V.phone settings (Visual preference)</b>	See page 77.
<b>V.phone settings (Brightness)</b>	<p>You can adjust the brightness of the camera image to be sent to other party to -3 (dark) through +3 (bright).</p> <p>▶ <b>Brightness</b> ▶ Select a brightness level.</p>
At videophone start-up	0

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>V.phone settings (White balance)</b>	<p>You can adjust the colors of the camera image to be sent to the other party, to make the colors look more natural.</p> <p>▶ <b>White balance</b> ▶ Select an item.</p> <p><b>Fine weather</b> . . . . . For talking outdoors in fine weather</p> <p><b>Cloudy weather</b> . . . . . For talking in cloudy weather or in the shade</p> <p><b>Automatic</b> . . . . . For adjusting white balance automatically</p> <p><b>Light bulb</b> . . . . . For talking under incandescent light</p>
At videophone start-up	Automatic
<b>V.phone settings (Color mode set)</b>	<p>You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party.</p> <p>▶ <b>Color mode set</b> ▶ Select a color tone.</p>
At videophone start-up	Normal
<b>V.phone settings (Night mode)</b>	<p>You can lengthen the camera's exposure time to make the camera image to be sent clear in a dark place.</p> <p>▶ <b>Night mode</b> ▶ ON or OFF</p>
At videophone start-up	OFF
<b>V.phone settings (Focus)</b>	<p>You can set the focus for the outside camera during a videophone call.</p> <p>▶ <b>Focus</b> ▶ Close-up or Landscape</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The focus for the inside camera is fixed to "Portrait" (suitable mode to shoot portraits), so you cannot change the setting.</li> </ul>
At videophone start-up	Landscape
<b>Chara-den setup</b>	See page 74.
<b>Backlight</b>	<p>You can select whether to light the display constantly or light for about 15 seconds after an operation.</p> <p>▶ <b>Constant light or 15 seconds light</b></p>
<b>LCD AI</b>	See page 119.
<b>Own number</b>	You can display your phone number.
<b>Key guide</b>	You can display the guide of key operation during a videophone call.

&lt;Hands-free with Videophone&gt;

## Setting Videophone Hands-free

You can set whether to switch to Hands-free automatically for when a videophone call starts.

- 1  **Settings** ▶ **Videophone** ▶ **Hands-free w/ V. phone**  
▶ **ON or OFF**

- See page 63 for the operation while Hands-free is activated and how to switch to Hands-free.

&lt;Visual Preference&gt;

## Setting Image Quality for Videophone Calls

You can set the quality of both the receiving image and sending image on the display.

- 1  **Settings** ▶ **Videophone** ▶ **Visual preference**  
▶ **Select an image quality.**

- “Prefer motion spd” is effective for moving images. When there is little motion, the quality becomes better if you set to “Prefer img qual”.
- If you operate from the Function menu during a videophone call, the setting is effective only for the current videophone call.

### Information

- If the radio wave conditions weaken during a videophone call, the image may appear like a mosaic.

&lt;Select Image&gt;

## Changing Image Displays for Videophone Calls

You can set an image to be sent to the other party.

- 1  **Settings** ▶ **Videophone** ▶ **Select image**  
▶ **Select an item.**

**On hold** . . . . . Sets an image for during answer-hold (On hold).

**Holding** . . . . . Sets an image for while a call is on hold (Holding).

**Substitute image**

. . . . . Sets a substitute image (still image or Chara-den) for when the camera is off.

**Record message**

. . . . . Sets an image while recording a record message.

**Preparing** . . . . . Sets an image for while playing back an answer message.

**Movie memo**



. . . . . Sets an image for while recording a movie memo.

## 2 Select an image.

**Pre-installed** . . . . . For sending a pre-installed still image to the other party.

**Original** . . . . . For sending an appropriate message with a still image stored using “Set display”.

**Chara-den** . . . . . For sending a Chara-den image selected by “Substitute image”.  
(See page 74)  
(Displayed only when “Substitute image” has been selected in step 1.)



- Press  **(Play)** to play back a demo to check the still image or Chara-den image.
- To change the setting of “Original” or “Chara-den”, press  **(FUNC)**, select “Change setting”, then select a still image or Chara-den image. If you have selected “Original”, select a still image after selecting a folder. See “Set display” for settable still images.

### Information

- Even if you delete the still image selected from “Original”, that still image is displayed to the other party. To change, set by “Change setting” or “Set display”.

## Set by Call

You can set an image to be sent to the other party for making a videophone call.

- 1 Enter a phone number  
or  
bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.
- 2   ► Select image ► Me or Chara-den
  - The setting is completed when you select "Me".
  - To cancel the setting by call, select "Release". The setting is completed.
- 3 Select a Chara-den image.

## <Voice Call Auto Redial>

### Redialing as a Voice Call when a Videophone Call cannot be Connected

If a videophone call cannot be connected, it will be automatically redialed as a voice call.

- 1  ► Settings ► Videophone ► Voice call auto redial  
► ON or OFF

#### Information

- The charges for calls once switched to voice calls are billed at the rates for the voice calls.
- Voice Call Auto Redial does not work when a videophone call cannot be connected such as when the line is busy or the other party's phone is in Public Mode (Drive Mode). However, Voice Call Auto Redial works when you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support the videophone function.

## <Notify Switchable Mode>

### Setting for Switching between a Voice Call and a Videophone Call

You can let the other party know that your FOMA phone can switch between a voice call and videophone call.

This function is set to "Indication ON" at the time of contract. When "Notify switchable mode" is set to "Indication ON", the caller can switch between the videophone call and voice call.

- You cannot operate "Notify switchable mode" when you are out of the service area or radio waves do not reach, or during a call.

- 1  ► Settings ► Videophone ► Notify switchable mode  
► Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Indication ON	► YES ► OK
Indication OFF	► YES ► OK
Check indication	You can check the setting of the function.

## <Videophone while Packet>

### Selecting Response to Incoming Videophone Calls during i-mode

- 1  ► Settings ► Incoming call ► V-phone while packet  
► Select an item.

#### V-phone priority

- .. Shows the Videophone Call Receiving display. When you answer the videophone call, packet communication is disconnected.

#### Packet downld priority

- .. Rejects the videophone call and continues the communication.

#### V-phone answerphone

- .. Connects the incoming videophone call to the Voice Mail Service Center.

#### Call forwarding

- .. Forwards the incoming videophone call to the forwarding destination.



### Information

- If you have not signed up for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, "Packet downld priority" works even if you set to "V-phone answerphone" or "Call forwarding".

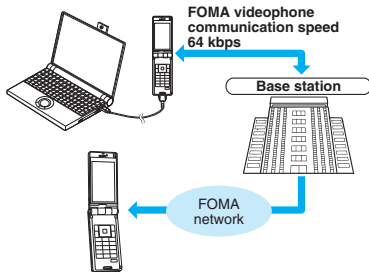
## Connecting FOMA Phone to External Devices to Use Videophone Function

You can operate your FOMA phone from an external device such as your personal computer for making or receiving videophone calls by connecting them using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option).

To use this function, you need to install a videophone application program on a dedicated external device or personal computer, and further, you need to prepare equipment (commercial item) such as an earphone/microphone or USB compatible web camera.

- For operating environments for a videophone application program and how to set or operate it, refer to the instruction manual or other literature for an external device.
- You can use "ドコモテレビ電話ソフト (DoCoMo Videophone Software)" for the application program that supports this function. Download it from the DoCoMo Videophone Software web site. (For details such as operating environment for the personal computers, refer to the support web page.)

<http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (Japanese only)



### Information

- You cannot make a videophone call from the external device during a voice call.

### Information

- When you have signed up for Call Waiting Service, an incoming videophone call from an external device during a voice call is recorded as a missed call in Received Calls. The same applies for an incoming voice call, videophone call, and 64K data communication during a videophone call from an external device.

### <Remote Monitoring>

## Checking inside the Room when You are Out

You can use the inside camera of the FOMA phone as a monitoring camera to observe the remote location from a phone that has the videophone function based on 3G-324M. While "Remote monitoring" is set to "ON", the FOMA phone automatically starts Remote Monitoring when it receives a videophone call from a phone number stored as "Other ID" of "Remote monitoring".

(The FOMA phone needs to be set to Normal Style.)

- 1 **MENU** ▶ Settings ▶ Videophone ▶ Remote monitoring  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.

- To release Remote Monitoring, select "Set", then select "OFF".

- 2 **Other ID** ▶ <Not recorded>  
▶ Enter a phone number.

Other ID	
1	<Not recorded>
2	<Not recorded>
3	<Not recorded>
4	<Not recorded>
5	<Not recorded>


Other ID list

- To change, select the stored phone number.
- You can store up to five phone numbers that can enter up to 26 digits by using numerals, #, \*, or +.
- To return to the setting display for Remote Monitoring, press **CLR** from the Other ID list after storing phone number.



- 3 **Ring time** ▶ Enter a ring time (seconds).

- You can enter the time from "003" through "120" in three digits until Remote Monitoring starts after receiving a videophone call.
- You cannot set the same ring time for Remote Monitoring, Auto Answer Setting and Record Message Setting. Set a different time for each.

## 4 Set ▶ ON

- When receiving videophone calls from the phone numbers stored as “Other ID”, the FOMA phone automatically answers to start Remote Monitoring after the ring time elapses.
- “” is displayed while this function is set to “ON”.
- You cannot set to “ON” in Manner Mode.

### Function Menu of the Other ID List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Look-up address</b>	You can call up a phone number in the Phonebook, Dialed Calls, or Received Calls to enter it. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>Phonebook</b> ... Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number. <b>Dialed calls</b> ... Highlight a phone number and press  (Select). <b>Received calls</b> ... Highlight a phone number and press  (Select).
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ YES
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ YES

#### Information

<Delete this> <Delete all>

- If you delete all phone numbers stored as “Other ID”, “Remote monitoring” is set to “OFF”.

## Perform Remote Monitoring





### 1 Make a videophone call from a stored phone number.

After the ring time set for “Remote monitoring” elapses, Remote Monitoring automatically starts.

- The image through the receiving end’s camera appears on the display and the sound comes out of the speaker.
- You cannot set Voice-only Remote Monitoring.
- Make a videophone call notifying your caller ID. If the caller ID is not notified, Remote Monitoring will not start and the call will be handled as an ordinary incoming videophone call.

### 2 Remote Monitoring ends when the calling end or receiving end presses .

## For answering a videophone call without starting Remote Monitoring at the receiving end

Press  or  before the FOMA phone answers a videophone call automatically. If you press  () , the videophone call starts sending the substitute image to the other party.

- When a remote monitoring call comes in, “Setting when opened” is disabled.
- If you press  when a remote monitoring call comes in, the call will be cut and Remote Monitoring will not start.

#### Information

- When your FOMA phone is used for the receiving end, an image through the caller’s camera appears, and sound comes out. (You cannot switch to a substitute image.)
- Remote Monitoring does not start during Manner Mode and Public Mode (Drive Mode). However, it starts even during Lock All.
- When Remote Monitoring is set to “ON” and a videophone call comes in from the phone number set as “Other ID”, Remote Monitoring starts after the set ring time, even when “Ring time”, “Auto answer setting”, or “Record message setting” is set and regardless of their ring times.
- When Remote Monitoring is not performed, it is recorded in Received Calls as a missed videophone call.
- If the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected when a remote monitoring call comes in, the ring tone will sound from both the earphone and the speaker, even when “Headset usage setting” is set to “Headset only”.
- The ring tone for Remote Monitoring sounds. (You cannot change the ring tone for Remote Monitoring.)  
The ring tone sounds at the volume set for “Videophone” of “Ring volume”, but at “Level 2” if you have set “Step”, “Level 1” or below. The flickering color is “Gradation”, and its flickering pattern is “Standard”, regardless of the Illumination setting.
- You cannot put incoming remote monitoring calls on answer-hold (On Hold).
- If you set both Call Forwarding Service and Remote Monitoring, and give priority to Remote Monitoring, set its ring time shorter than that for Call Forwarding Service.
- To use Call Forwarding Service for Remote Monitoring, store the phone number of dialing side as “Other ID” and set a 3G-324M videophone as the forwarding destination.
- **You may be imposed punishment according to the law and rule (such as the nuisance prevention ordinance) if you use the FOMA phone to give a remarkable nuisance and misdeed to the public.**



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when shooting and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

# PushTalk

What is PushTalk? .....	82
Making a PushTalk Call .....	82
Adding a Member during PushTalk Communication .....	84
Receiving a PushTalk Call .....	84
Storing in PushTalk Phonebook ..... <Store in PushTalk Phonebook>	85
Making a Call Using PushTalk Phonebook .....	86
Deleting PushTalk Phonebook Entries ..... <Delete from PushTalk Phonebook>	87
Making Full Use of PushTalk Phonebook .....	87
Setting PushTalk Calling/Receiving .....	88

## What is PushTalk?

You can communicate with multiple persons (up to five persons including yourself); press the PushTalk key to access the PushTalk Phonebook, select the persons you want to talk with, and press the PushTalk key. You are charged a PushTalk communication fee each time you press (talk) the PushTalk key.

- For details on PushTalk or compatible models, refer to DoCoMo web page or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

### ■ PushTalkPlus\*

This service enables you to have a PushTalk call with up to 20 persons including you. You can use the shared Phonebook on the network, and can check the members for their status, thus PushTalk becomes more useful.

\* You need to subscribe separately.

- For details such as how to operate, refer to the booklet which is supplied at subscription.

## Making a PushTalk Call

### 1 Enter the other party's phone number











When you are dialing, a confirmation tone for starting a PushTalk call sounds for a few seconds, and then the same ring tone as the voice (videophone) call sounds.

- You can make a group call to multiple persons using the PushTalk Phonebook. (See page 85 and page 86)



### 2 When the other party answers, talk while pressing .


When the other party answers, a confirmation tone for starting communication sounds.

- "" blinks during dialing and lights during communication.
- When you get the talker's right, the talker's right obtained tone sounds. The other party hears your voice only while you are pressing  and having the talker's right. When you release , the talker's right is released, and a confirmation tone sounds.
- You cannot get the talker's right and an error tone sounds even if you press  when another member has it.
- Press  ( Add) or press  ( FUNC) and select "Add member" to add a member. Go to step 1 of "Adding a Member during PushTalk Communication" on page 84.






### 3 Press to end the communication after talking.

A tone to notify the disconnection of communication sounds at the other end.

- When the call you made is a group call, the PushTalk communication itself continues even if you press , and the icon indicating that you are not participating appears on each member's display and a confirmation tone sounds. However, when all the members exit, the PushTalk communication itself ends.

### Information


- The talker is charged a communication fee from when he/she presses  and the talker's right obtained tone sounds.
- You cannot make emergency calls at 110/119/118 from PushTalk.
- The duration you can talk per talker's right is limited. The talker's right release notice tone sounds before the limited time arrives, and the talker's right is released. In addition, the PushTalk communication itself ends when no one gets the talker's right in a certain period of time.
- Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated by "Hands-free w/ PushTalk". (See page 88) However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of "Hands-free w/ PushTalk".
- The FOMA phone works according to "Setting when closed" if you close it during communication. You can set also by pressing  ( FUNC) and selecting "Set. when closed". (See page 67)

## Information

- Whether to notify others of your phone number when you make PushTalk calls follows the setting for “Activate” of “Caller ID notification” (see page 47). However, when you set “Notify caller ID” from the Function menu for dialing, or when “Notify/Not notify” is displayed in the detailed Redial/Dialed Call/Received Call display, each of those settings will work.
- When you make a PushTalk call with your phone number notified, your phone number as well as all members’ phone numbers are notified to all members including added members. When you make a PushTalk call without notifying your phone number, “User unset” appears in the caller’s and member’s fields on the displays of all the members including added members. Your phone number is very important information, so take the utmost care to notify others of it.
- If you make a PushTalk call during i-mode communication, the i-mode communication is disconnected.
- You cannot use PushTalk by Number B of 2in1.

## Making/Receiving a PushTalk group call

You can use the PushTalk Phonebook or Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls to communicate with multiple members.

While making or receiving a PushTalk group call, the group name and the members in the group are displayed. Press  to confirm other members. When a call is received with the other party’s phone number not provided, “User unset” is displayed.

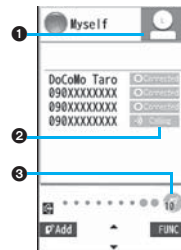
## Re-participating or participating midway in PushTalk communication

Use Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls to make a PushTalk call while the PushTalk communication continues among other members.

- If the PushTalk communication has already been finished, your call is dialed as a new PushTalk call.

## Display while dialing/communicating





- The phone number of the member who has the talker’s right is displayed, and the state of the talker’s right is displayed in color of the round icon at the upper left. When the name of that member, phone number, and image are stored in the Phonebook, his/her name and image are displayed. However, when you cannot receive a member’s information correctly, “?” is displayed. When the FOMA phone is closed, the phone number (name) of the member who has the talker’s right is displayed on the Private window.





During group communication

Color of the round icon at the upper left	State of the talker’s rights
Blue	Calling
Green	You can get the talker’s right.
Blinking in green	You have the talker’s right.
Blinking in yellow	Another member has the talker’s right.
Blinking in green and red	The talker’s right will be released automatically in a few seconds because it has long been retained (A release notice tone sounds).

- The state of members is shown by icons during dialing or communicating. (Characters other than shown below might appear.)

Icon	State of members
 Calling ※	Calling
 Connected	Has participated in the PushTalk call.
 不参加 ※	Does not answer, has ended the PushTalk call, out of the service area, or the power is off.
 Driving ※	Has activated Public Mode (Drive Mode).

※ Displayed only for the PushTalk communication among three or more members.

- The number of times you have got the talker’s right is the total of the number of “” and the number shown in “”. When 999 times are exceeded, the counting is reset to 0.



## Adding a Member during PushTalk Communication











You can make a PushTalk call to another member during PushTalk communication and add that member to the communication.

You can add a person to the members by accessing the PushTalk Phonebook, Phonebook, or Dialed Calls/Received Calls, or by directly entering a phone number.

You can add up to five members (including yourself), and can repeat adding up to that number.

- Members can be added from the calling end only.
- You can add even the members who use the PushTalk compatible models which do not have this function.
- If you have already made a call to four members, you cannot add a new member though you can call up a member who has exited the call again.
- The added members are not stored in Redial/Dialed Calls.

- 1** During PushTalk communication ▶    
▶ Do the following operations.




Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>View PushTalk PB</b>	You can call up a PushTalk Phonebook entry to make a PushTalk call. (See page 86) Instead of pressing  , press   to call. • Press  to switch between the PushTalk Phonebook list and PushTalk Group list.
<b>View phonebook</b>	You can call up a Phonebook entry to make a PushTalk call. ▶ Call up a Phonebook entry ▶ Highlight a phone number and press   .
<b>Direct input</b>	You can enter a phone number to make a PushTalk call. ▶ Enter a phone number ▶  
<b>View call records</b>	You can call up Dialed Calls/Received Calls to make a PushTalk call. ▶ Dialed calls or Received calls ▶ Select a record ▶ Select a phone number ▶  

### Information



- The caller cannot add members if he/she uses a PushTalk compatible model which does not have this function.
- For a member who uses a PushTalk compatible model which does not have this function, the members added during PushTalk communication are not shown and a confirmation tone does not sound.








## Receiving a PushTalk Call

- 1** When a PushTalk call comes in, “PushTalk call” is displayed, the ring tone sounds, and the Call/Charging indicator flickers.

- “PushTalk group call” is displayed for an incoming group call.
- To reject a call, press   during ringing and select “Call rejection”. You can reject the call also by pressing .




- 2** Press  to answer a PushTalk call  
▶ Talk while pressing .

- You can answer also by pressing  or  instead of pressing . You can answer also by pressing  with the FOMA phone closed.
- When you get talker's right, the talker's right obtained tone is played back. The other party hears your voice only while you are pressing  and having the talker's right. When you release , the talker's right is released and a confirmation tone sounds.
- You cannot get the talker's right and an error tone sounds, even if you press  when another member has it.
- “Setting when opened” and “Record message setting” become invalid.





### 3 Press to end the communication after talking.


A tone for confirming the end of communication sounds at the other end.

- When the call you received is a group call, the PushTalk communication itself continues even if you press , and the icon indicating that you are not participating appears on each member's display and a confirmation tone sounds. However, when all the members exit, the PushTalk communication itself ends.

#### Information

- The talker is charged a communication fee from when he/she presses  and the talker's right obtained tone sounds.
- The duration you can talk per talker's right is limited. The talker's right release notice tone sounds before the limited time arrives, and the talker's right is released. In addition, the PushTalk communication itself ends when no one gets the talker's right in a certain period of time.
- Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated by "Hands-free w/ PushTalk". (See page 88) However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of "Hands-free w/ PushTalk".
- The FOMA phone works according to "Setting when closed" if you close it during communication. You can set also by pressing  ( **FUNC** ) and selecting "Set. when closed". (See page 67)
- You cannot use "On hold" or "Holding" function for PushTalk.
- A PushTalk call that comes in during a voice call, a PushTalk call that comes in during Public Mode (Drive Mode), and a voice call (when "PushTalk arrival act" is set to other than "Answer"), a videophone call, data communication, or a PushTalk call that comes in during PushTalk communication are recorded as missed calls in Received Calls.
- A PushTalk call that comes in during a videophone call or during data communication does not work and is not recorded in Received Calls.
- After you finish PushTalk communication or when you cannot answer to a PushTalk call, you can use a received call record to make a PushTalk call and to re-participate or participate midway in the communication so long as the PushTalk communication continues among other members. If the PushTalk communication among other members has already been finished, your call is dialed as a new PushTalk call.
- When a caller adds members during PushTalk communication, the added members are not stored in Received Calls.
- See page 89 for how to respond to the PushTalk call during i-mode communication.
- When the caller is defined as the one to be rejected, the call is rejected. The setting of call rejection applies to the setting for both voice calls and videophone calls.

#### Information

- When a PushTalk call comes in during Lock All or Omakase Lock, " Miss!" appears after the lock is released.

#### <Store in PushTalk Phonebook>


### Storing in PushTalk Phonebook

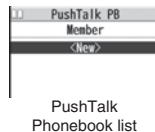
From the items stored in a FOMA phone's Phonebook entry, you need to store a name (reading) and a phone number in the PushTalk Phonebook. You can store up to 1,000 entries in the PushTalk Phonebook.


# 1



▶ Do the following operations.

- You can store also by selecting <New>.
- If you store multiple phone numbers from a Phonebook entry, the phone number previously stored in the PushTalk Phonebook is overwritten.
- You cannot display the PushTalk Phonebook list even when you press  when the Stand-by display appears on the horizontal display.



Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>View phonebook</b>	You can access an entry already stored in the FOMA phone's Phonebook and store it in the PushTalk Phonebook. ▶ Call up a Phonebook entry ▶ Select a phone number ▶ YES
<b>Direct input</b>	You can store the entry in the PushTalk Phonebook after storing it in the FOMA phone's Phonebook. ▶ Phone ▶ Select a storing method. New . . . Go to step 2 on page 92. Add . . . Go to step 3 of "Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook" on page 96. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When multiple phone numbers are stored in a Phonebook entry, press  ( <b>Finish</b> ) and select the phone number you want to store in the PushTalk Phonebook. The "★" mark is added to the phone number that has already been stored in the PushTalk Phonebook.</li></ul>

Item	Operation/Explanation
View call records	<p>You can access a dialed call record or received call record to store it in the PushTalk Phonebook. You cannot store in the PushTalk Phonebook from the dialed/received call record of the party who is not stored in the FOMA phone's Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ <b>Dialed calls or Received calls</b> ▶ <b>Select a record</b> ▶ <b>Select a phone number</b> ▶ <b>YES</b></p>


### Information

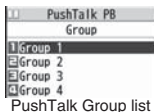
- In the PushTalk Phonebook, you cannot store the Phonebook entries set to B by Phonebook 2in1 Setting.

## Store in Group

You can store PushTalk Phonebook entries in groups. You can store up to 19 members per group and create up to 10 groups.


### 1 PushTalk Phonebook list ▶ (Group)

- Press  (Member) to show the PushTalk Phonebook list.

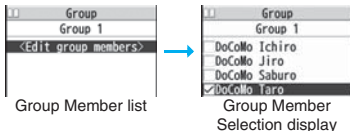


PushTalk Group list

### 2 Select a group ▶ (Add)

- ▶ **Put a check mark for members to be stored**
- ▶  (Finish)


- You can store also by selecting <Edit group members> from the Group Member list.



Group Member list

Group Member Selection display

## Function Menu of the Group Member Selection Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Members to store	<p>You can display only members applied with a check mark.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press  (Store) to store the members to the group.</li> </ul>


Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Search	<p>▶ <b>Select a search method.</b> <b>Reading?</b> . . . See page 98. <b>Group?</b> . . . . See page 98.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a member.</b> You can display the Group Member Selection display with the searched members selected.</p>

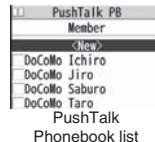
## Making a Call Using PushTalk Phonebook

You can make a group call to up to four members using the PushTalk Phonebook or PushTalk group.

### 1 PushTalk Phonebook list ▶ Put a check mark for members you want to make a call to

 or  (Dial)




- Press  (Group) to show the PushTalk Group list.
- When you do not check any members, the call is made to the highlighted member.

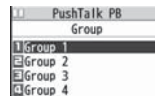


PushTalk Phonebook list

## Make a Call from PushTalk Group

### 1 PushTalk Group list ▶ Select a group.

- Select a group and press  or  (Dial) to make a call to all the members in the group.
- Press  (Member) to show the PushTalk Phonebook list.



PushTalk Group list



## 2 Put a check mark for members you want to make a call to

▶ or (Dial)

- When you do not check any members, the call is made to the highlighted member.

Group
Group 1
<Edit group members>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DoCoMo Ichiro
<input type="checkbox"/> DoCoMo Jiro
<input type="checkbox"/> DoCoMo Saburo
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DoCoMo Taro
Group Member list

### Information

- When five or more members are stored in a group, you cannot make a call to all the members by selecting the group.

<Delete from PushTalk Phonebook>

## Deleting PushTalk Phonebook Entries

### 1 PushTalk Phonebook list ▶ (FUNC)

▶ DEL from P-Talk PB ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Delete this	▶ Select a deleting method. <b>DEL from P-Talk PB</b> ... Deletes an entry in the PushTalk Phonebook only. Does not delete the entry in the FOMA phone's Phonebook. <b>DEL from all PBs</b> ... Deletes an entry in both the PushTalk Phonebook and FOMA phone's Phonebook. ▶ YES
Delete all	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES • The FOMA phone's Phonebook entries are not deleted.

## Delete from PushTalk Group

### 1 PushTalk Group list ▶ (FUNC) ▶ DEL from PT group ▶ YES

## Delete Group Members

### 1 Group Member list ▶ (FUNC) ▶ DEL group members ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Delete this	▶ YES
Delete all	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

### Information

- Even when you delete PushTalk groups or group members, the PushTalk Phonebook entries and FOMA phone's Phonebook entries are not deleted.

## Making Full Use of PushTalk Phonebook

### Function Menu of the PushTalk Phonebook List/PushTalk Group List/Group Member List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Members to call	When the PushTalk Phonebook list or Group Member list is displayed, you can display the checked members only. • Press  or  (Dial) to make a PushTalk call. • Press  (FUNC) to select "Notify caller ID" and then you can select whether to notify your phone number. When "Cancel prefix" is selected, the FOMA phone works according to the setting by "Caller ID notification".
Search PushTalk PB [Phonebook list only]	▶ Select a search method. <b>Reading?</b> ... See page 98. <b>Group?</b> ... See page 98. ▶ Select a member. You can display the PushTalk Phonebook list with the searched members selected.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Store in P-Talk PB</b> [Phonebook list only]	See page 85.
<b>DEL from P-Talk PB</b> [Phonebook list only]	See page 87.
<b>Edit group members</b> [Group list/Member list]	You can edit the members in the group. Go to step 2 on page 86.
<b>Edit group name</b> [Group list only]	▶ <b>Enter a group name.</b> ● You can enter up to 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters.
<b>DEL from PT group</b> [Group list only]	See page 87.
<b>DEL group members</b> [Member list only]	See page 87.
<b>Sound setting</b>	See page 88.
<b>Vibration setting</b>	See page 89.
<b>Auto answer set.</b>	See page 88.
<b>Ring time setting</b>	See page 88.
<b>Hands-Free</b>	See page 88.
<b>Set. when closed</b>	See page 67.
<b>i-mode arrival act</b>	See page 89.
<b>P-Talk arrival act</b>	See page 88.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Network connection</b>	You can connect to the network to use PushTalkPlus. This is available only when you have signed up for PushTalkPlus. (See page 82)

## Setting PushTalk Calling/Receiving

1  Settings ▶ PushTalk ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Auto answer setting</b>	▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>ON</b> . . . . . Automatically answers immediately after receiving regardless of "Ring time setting". <b>OFF</b> . . . . . Does not answer automatically.
<b>Ring time setting</b>	▶ <b>Enter a ring time (seconds).</b> ● Enter two digits from "01" through "60". ● "Disconnected" is displayed at the other end after the ring time has elapsed.
<b>Hands-free w/ PushTalk</b>	You can set whether to hear the other party's voice from the speaker or from the earpiece for when PushTalk communication starts. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> ● See page 63 for how the FOMA phone works while Hands-free is activated and how to switch to Hands-free during communication.
<b>PushTalk arrival act</b>	▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>Voice mail</b> . . . . . Connects an incoming voice call to the Voice Mail Service Center. <b>Call forwarding</b> . . . . . Forwards an incoming voice call to the forwarding destination. <b>Call rejection</b> . . . . . Rejects an incoming voice call and does not answer. <b>Answer</b> . . . . . Shows the Voice Call Receiving display.
<b>Sound setting</b>	You can set a ringing pattern for the sounds during PushTalk communication. ▶ <b>Select a pattern.</b>



Item	Operation/Explanation
Vibration setting	You can set whether to notify you by the vibration when you try to get the talker's right, or when a member's state changes to "Connected". ▶ ON or OFF

### Information

#### <Auto answer setting>

- When you set to "ON", calls are automatically answered even when the FOMA phone is closed regardless of "Setting when closed".
- When you set to "ON", calls are automatically answered after switching to Hands-free regardless of "Hands-free w/ PushTalk". However, the FOMA phone works according to the setting of "Hands-free w/ PushTalk" if you open the FOMA phone after you answer a call with the FOMA phone closed.
- When you set to "ON", the ring tone, vibrator, Call/Charging indicator, and backlight do not work. Calls are not automatically answered during Manner Mode.

#### <PushTalk arrival act>

- If you press  for an incoming voice call while "Answer" is set, the Call Receiving display appears after you finish the PushTalk communication, and then you can answer the voice call. To continue the PushTalk communication, press  (FUNC) and select "Call rejection", "Call forwarding", or "Voice mail".

#### <Sound setting>

- In "Simple" mode, some part of the confirmation sounds (talking right obtained tone, etc.) become silence during PushTalk communication.

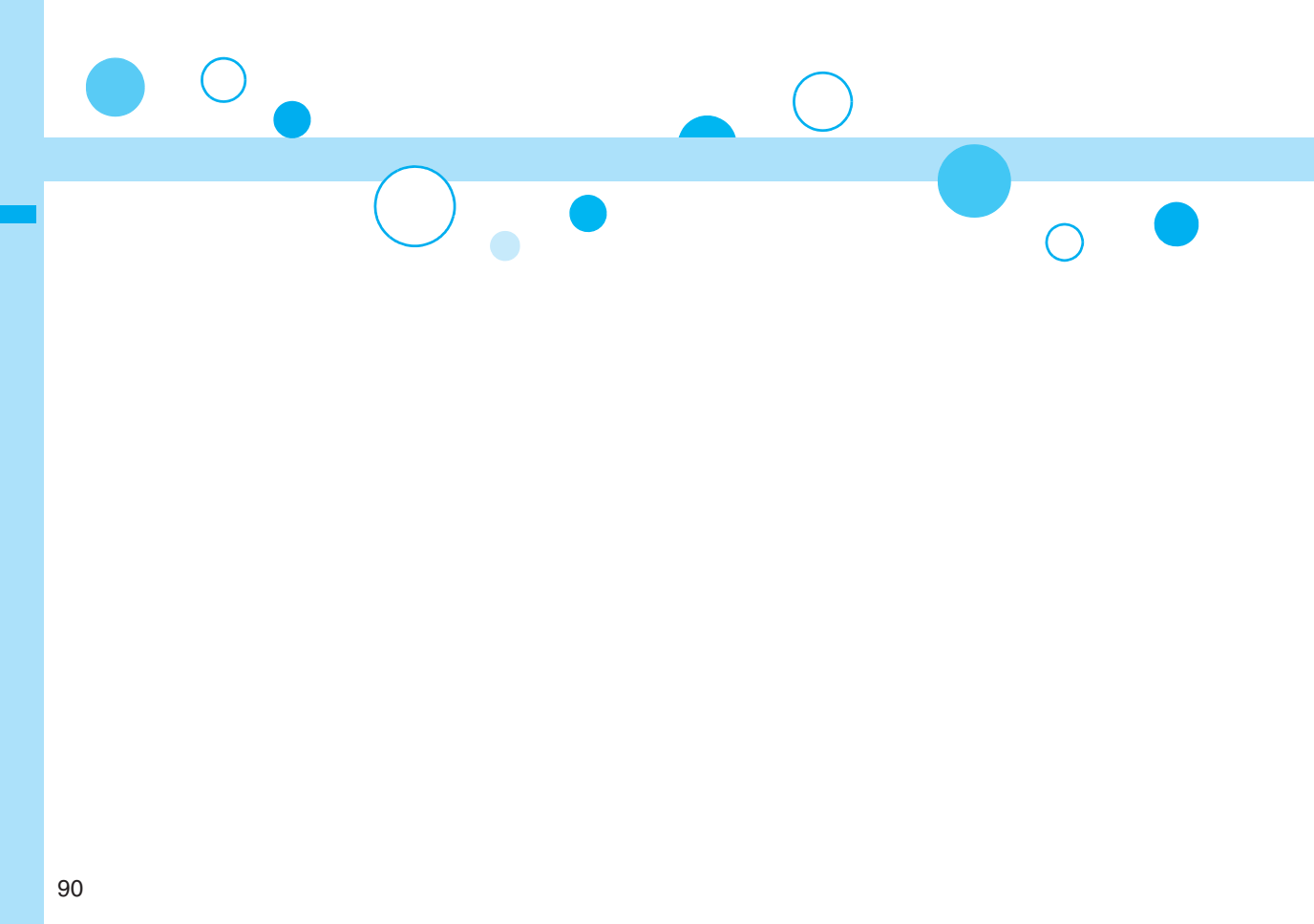
## i-mode Arrival Act

You can set whether to show the PushTalk Call Receiving display for when a PushTalk call comes in during i-mode communication.

### 1 ▶ i-mode settings ▶ i-mode arrival act ▶ Select an item.

**PushTalk preferred** . . . Ends i-mode communication and brings up the PushTalk Call Receiving display.

**i-mode preferred** . . . . Rejects receiving a PushTalk call and continues i-mode communication. The call is not recorded in Received Calls.



# Phonebook

Phonebooks Available for FOMA Phone .....	92
Storing Phonebook Entries..... <Add to Phonebook>	92
Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook	96
Setting Groups..... <Group Setting>	97
Dialing from Phonebooks .....	<Search Phonebook> 98
Editing Phonebook Entries..... <Edit Phonebook>	100
Deleting Phonebook Entries..... <Delete Data>	100
Checking Number of Phonebook Entries ..... <No. of Phonebook>	100
Making Full Use of Phonebooks.....	101
Making a Call with a Few Touches .....	<Two-touch Dial> 103
Accessing Phonebook Entries by Voice .....	<Voice Dial> 103
Saving (Restoring/Updating) Phonebook to Data Storage Center ..... <Data Security Service>	105

## Phonebooks Available for FOMA Phone

You can use two types of Phonebook, namely the Phonebook in the FOMA phone itself, and the Phonebook on the UIM.

		FOMA phone	UIM	
Number of entries		1,000 entries	50 entries	
Contents of Phonebook	Basic item	Name (Reading)	○	
		Group	19 groups	10 groups
		Phone number	4 phone numbers	1 phone number
		Phone number icon	○	×
		Mail address	3 mail addresses	1 mail address
		Mail address icon	○	×
		Address	○	×
		Location information	○	×
		Birthday	○	×
		Memo	○	×
	Image	100 images	×	
	Memory No.	From 000 to 999	×	
	Setting item	Ring tone	○	
		Vibrator	○	
		Illumination	○	
		Picture	○	
Chara-den		100 Chara-den images	×	
Mail ring tone		○		
Mail vibrator		○		
Mail illumination		○		
Answer message	○			
Restrictions	Restrict dialing	○	×	
	Call rejection			
	Call acceptance			
	Call forwarding			
	Voice mail			
Secret code	○	×		
Storage in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only	○	×		

		FOMA phone	UIM		
Contents of Group	Name	○	○		
	Ring tone				
	Vibrator				
	Illumination				
	Picture				
	Chara-den			○	×
	Mail ring tone				
	Mail vibrator				
	Mail illumination				
	Answer message				

○: Can be stored. ×: Cannot be stored.

- You can set your UIM into another FOMA phone and use the UIM Phonebook entries.


<Add to Phonebook>

## Storing Phonebook Entries


You can store Phonebook entries in the FOMA phone (Phone) or on the UIM.

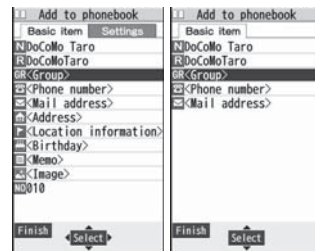
### 1 (for at least one second) ▶ Phone or UIM

The Edit Name display appears. Go to step 2 and enter a name.

- You cannot display the registration display for the Phonebook entries even when you press and hold  for at least one second when the Stand-by display appears on the horizontal display.

### 2 Do the following operations.




- You can press  to switch between the "Basic item" tab and "Settings" tab for the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

















For the FOMA phone

For the UIM




Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>N Name</b>	<p>You can enter the name of the person or company in kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic characters, or numerals.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter a name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● For the FOMA phone, you can enter up to 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters. You can enter pictographs and symbols as well.</li> <li>● For the UIM, you can enter up to 10 full-pitch characters/21 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. (Half-pitch katakana characters cannot be entered.) When the entry contains both full-pitch and half-pitch characters, you can store up to 10 characters from the beginning regardless of full-pitch or half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>R Reading</b>	<p>You can enter the reading in half-pitch katakana, alphabetic characters, or numerals.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter a reading.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● For the FOMA phone, you can enter up to 32 half-pitch characters. You can enter half-pitch symbols as well.</li> <li>● For the UIM, you can enter up to 12 full-pitch characters/25 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. (Half-pitch katakana characters cannot be entered.) When the entry contains both full-pitch and half-pitch characters, you can store up to 12 characters from the beginning regardless of full-pitch or half-pitch characters.</li> <li>● If the displayed reading is acceptable, you do not need to edit it. However, depending on the characters entered for names or entering method, they are not reflected in the reading.</li> <li>● If you enter “㇀ (reduced size)” or “㇁ (reduced size)” for a name, “㇂ (half-pitch, regular size)” (for the FOMA phone) and “㇃ (regular size)” (for the UIM) are displayed in the reading field.</li> </ul>
<b>GR Group</b>	<p>In the FOMA phone, 19 groups are available. On the UIM, 10 groups are available.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a group.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When the storage is completed with no group selected, the Phonebook entry is stored in “No setting”.</li> </ul>







Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>☎ Phone number</b>	<p>You can store up to four phone numbers per Phonebook entry in the FOMA phone. You can set an icon for each phone number to categorize mobile phone numbers, office phone numbers, and so on.</p> <p>You can store only one phone number per Phonebook entry on the UIM.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter a phone number.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Enter from the city code for the phone numbers.</li> <li>● You can enter up to 26 digits. However, you can enter up to 20 digits for blue UIMs.</li> <li>● Press and hold  for at least one second to insert a pause (p) into the phone number you store. However, you cannot insert the pause (p) to the beginning of phone number or insert it consecutively. The pause (p) inserted to the end of phone number is not stored.</li> <li>● If you insert “✖” in the middle of a phone number, you cannot make a call. However, the phone number is recorded in Redial or Dialed Calls.</li> <li>● You can store the phone number which includes “#” such as that for information service as well.</li> </ul> <p>▶ <b>Select an icon.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If you have stored a phone number in the FOMA phone, another “ &lt;Phone number&gt;” will appear in the Add-to-Phonebook display. To store another phone number, select “ &lt;Phone number&gt;”.</li> </ul>



Item	Operation/Explanation
 Mail address	<p>You can store up to three mail addresses per Phonebook entry in the FOMA phone. You can set an icon for each mail address to categorize mobile phone addresses, home addresses, and so on. You can store only one mail address per Phonebook entry on the UIM.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter a mail address.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The mail address can consist of up to 50 half-pitch alphabets, numerals or symbol characters.</li> <li>• When the mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", store the phone number only.</li> <li>• For the FOMA phone, you can set a secret code as well. (See page 102)</li> </ul> <p>▶ <b>Select an icon.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you have stored a mail address in the FOMA phone, another " &lt;Mail address&gt;" will appear in the Add-to-Phonebook display. To store another mail address, select " &lt;Mail address&gt;".</li> </ul>
 Address	<p>▶ <b>Enter a ZIP code</b> ▶ <b>Enter a postal address.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 7 digits for the zip code.</li> <li>• You can enter up to 50 full-pitch/100 half-pitch characters for the postal address. Further, you can enter pictographs as well.</li> <li>• You cannot enter "〒" or "-" (hyphen) in the zip code.</li> </ul>

Item	Operation/Explanation
 Location information	<p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>By position loc.</b></p> <p>... Measures the current location and store the location information. After checking the location information, press .</p> <p><b>From loc. history</b></p> <p>... Select a piece of location information from Location History and store it.</p> <p><b>Attach from image</b></p> <p>... Stores the location information from an image. Select a folder, then the image.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To delete the stored location information, select "Delete location info".</li> <li>• When you press  ( Use) during measuring the current location, the confirmation display appears asking whether to display the result obtained so far from the location information.</li> <li>• To cancel measuring the current location, press  or .</li> <li>• Press  ( Retry) from the confirmation display for the location information to restart measuring in "Quality mode".</li> </ul>
 Birthday	<p>▶ <b>Enter a birthday</b> ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter the birthday from January 1, 1800 through December 31, 2099.</li> <li>• When you set to "ON", the birthday is stored as an anniversary in the schedule of every year. "誕生日 (Birthday) (name)" is stored as the anniversary content.</li> <li>• Even if you delete the Phonebook entries, the stored anniversaries are not deleted.</li> </ul>
 Memo	<p>▶ <b>Enter a memo.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 100 full-pitch/200 half-pitch characters. Further, you can enter pictographs as well.</li> </ul>



Item	Operation/Explanation
 <b>Image</b>	<p>The stored still image is displayed when you call up the Phonebook entry.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Select image</b> . . . You can store a still image in Data Box.</p> <p><b>Shoot image</b> . . . You can store the shot still image.</p> <p>Perform step 2 through step 3 on page 155.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To release the stored still image, select "Release image".</li> <li>• The size of a still image you can store is Stand-by (480 x 854) or smaller and up to 300 Kbytes in JPEG format or GIF format.</li> <li>• If you store a still image larger than 72 x 54 dots, it is displayed shrunk on the detailed Phonebook display.</li> <li>• If you store a still image larger than 240 x 180 dots, it is displayed shrunk on the Call Receiving display.</li> <li>• When "Disp. PH-book image" is set to "ON", the stored still image is displayed for an incoming call. However, when another image is stored in the "Picture" field, that image is preferentially displayed for the incoming call.</li> </ul>
 <b>Memory No.</b>	<p>▶ <b>Enter a memory number.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter a three-digit number of "000" through "999".</li> <li>• The lowest empty memory number "010" through "999" is entered in advance.</li> </ul> <p>If "010" through "999" are all occupied, the lowest empty memory number from "000" through "009" is entered.</p>
 <b>Ring tone</b>	<p>You can set a ring tone for when a voice call or videophone call comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select ring tone</b></p> <p>Go to step 2 on page 108.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To release the stored ring tone, select "Release ring tone".</li> </ul>

Item	Operation/Explanation
 <b>Vibrator</b>	<p>You can set a vibration pattern for when a voice call or videophone call comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select vibrator</b> ▶ <b>Select a vibration pattern.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To release the stored vibrator, select "Release vibrator".</li> </ul>
 <b>Illumination</b>	<p>You can set an illumination color for when a voice call or videophone call comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select illumination</b> ▶ <b>Select a color.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To release the stored illumination, select "Release illumination".</li> </ul>
 <b>Picture</b>	<p>You can set an image to be displayed for when a call comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select picture</b> ▶ <b>Select a type of image</b> ▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select an image.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To release the stored image, select "Release picture".</li> </ul>
 <b>Chara-den</b>	<p>The stored Chara-den image is displayed as a substitute image for videophone calls with the person stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select Chara-den</b> ▶ <b>Select a Chara-den image.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To release the stored Chara-den image, select "Release Chara-den".</li> </ul>
 <b>Mail ring tone</b>	<p>You can set a ring tone for when a mail message comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select ring tone</b></p> <p>Go to step 2 on page 108.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To release the stored mail ring tone, select "Release ring tone".</li> </ul>
 <b>Mail vibrator</b>	<p>You can set a vibration pattern for when a mail message comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select vibrator</b> ▶ <b>Select a vibration pattern.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To release the stored mail vibrator, select "Release vibrator".</li> </ul>

Item	Operation/Explanation
 <b>Mail illumination</b>	You can set an illumination color for when a mail message comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select illumination</b> ▶ <b>Select a color.</b></li> <li>● To release the stored mail illumination, select "Release illumination".</li> </ul>
 <b>Answer message</b>	You can set an answer message for Record Message by Phonebook entry. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select answer message</b> ▶ <b>Select an answer message.</b></li> <li>● To release the stored answer message, select "Release answer message".</li> </ul>

### 3 Press (Finish).

- If you have not entered any name, "Finish" is not displayed and you cannot store the entry.

### Phonebook entries while editing

#### When the low battery alarm sounds

The Phonebook entry you are editing is saved automatically. The confirmation display appears asking whether to resume editing when you continue editing after charging the battery or when you operate step 1 on page 92 and select the storage location for the interrupted Phonebook entry after changing to a charged battery.


Recall . . . You can resume editing the Phonebook entry.

New . . . . You can edit a new Phonebook entry. In this case, the interrupted data is retained. If you execute "Add to phonebook" after storing the new Phonebook entry, the confirmation display appears again.

- Only the most recently interrupted entry is retained.
- If you resume editing the data but then cancel editing without storing it, that data will be abandoned. Once you recall the data, be sure to store it.

#### If you receive a call or mail

You can respond it leaving the edited data as it is, thanks to the Multitask function.

To return to the Phonebook Edit display, press and hold  for at least one second to switch the menu. You can return to the Phonebook Edit display also by ending the call or mail function.


## Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook

You can store the displayed or selected phone number, mail address, and still image in the FOMA phone's or UIM's Phonebook.

Operation	Storable items
While a phone number is entered	Phone number
While a redial item, dialed call record, or received call record is displayed	Phone number
While Sent Address or Received Address is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While a site or screen memo is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While the text of Message R/F or mail is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While the data scanned by Bar Code Reader or Text Reader is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While a ToruCa file is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While your current location or location history is displayed	Location information
While a registered LCS client is displayed	Name/Phone number
While the Still Image list or a still image is displayed	Still image

### 1 Bring up/Select an item to be stored ▶ (FUNC)

#### ▶ Add to phonebook

- To store the address of the sender (or of another recipient of simultaneous mail) of the received mail or the destination address of the sent mail into the Phonebook, select "Store address".  
When the addresses of the sender and another recipient of simultaneous mail are found or the multiple destination addresses are found, the display for selecting an address appears. Use  to select the mail address or phone number you want to store.
- To store the results scanned by Text Reader in a Phonebook entry, select "Store phone No." or "Store mail add.".
- To store a still image in the Phonebook, select "Phonebook" from "Set display".
- When "Add to phonebook" is displayed on the Scanned Code Result display for Bar Code Reader, select "Add to phonebook"; then other information in the scanned code besides the phone number or mail address is entered into each field.

## 2 Phone or UIM ▶ Select a storing method.

**New** . . . Go to step 2 on page 92.

**Add** . . . Adds data to the existing Phonebook entry. When storing data on the UIM, "Overwrite" is displayed.

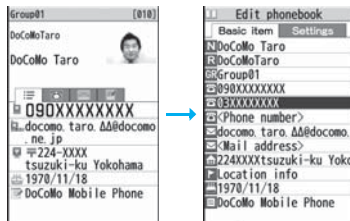
## 3 Select a search method ▶ Search the Phonebook

▶ Select a Phonebook entry to be stored ▶  (Select)

The phone number or mail address is entered automatically.

- See step 2 on page 92 to edit other items in the Phonebook entry.

- When you store into the FOMA phone's Phonebook, you can remain the original entry and store a new entry into a different location by changing the memory number.



## 4 (Finish) ▶ YES

- If you store the entry in the UIM Phonebook, select "Overwrite" to overwrite the original entry, or select "Add" to store it as a new entry.

### Information



- The Phonebook entry does not store the information of "Notify caller ID" included in Redial/Dialed Calls. To set Caller ID Notification, add "186"/"184" to the phone number and store it.
- Characters that cannot be stored may be replaced by spaces or deleted, and then stored.
- You may not be able to store the information from some sites into the Phonebook.

<Group Setting>

## Setting Groups


You can utilize the Phonebook by sorting the entries by group such as "Company" or "Friend", or by your interest such as "Baseball" or "Ceramic art". You can set a ring tone, vibration pattern, or illumination by group.

### 1 (MENU) ▶ Phonebook ▶ Group setting

- The groups on the UIM are indicated by "".
- To reset the group names and respective settings by group, which have already been stored, press  (FUNC), select "Reset group", and then select "YES".

### 2 Highlight a group and press (Edit)

▶ Select an item to be set ▶ Set the contents.

- When you select "GR Group name", enter a group name. You can store up to 10 full-pitch/21 half-pitch characters. However, you can store only up to 10 characters (regardless of full-pitch or half-pitch characters) when you enter both full-pitch and half-pitch characters for a UIM group name.
- See step 2 on page 92 for the operations of the other items. However, you cannot set for groups on the UIM.
- Select a stored group, or press  (FUNC) and select "Check setting" to check its settings. However, you cannot check the settings of the groups on the UIM.


### 3 Press (Finish).

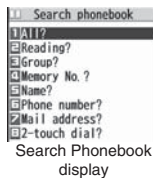
&lt;Search Phonebook&gt;






## Dialing from Phonebooks




You can retrieve stored Phonebook entries by eight search methods.

### 1 Do the following operations.




- The display for the same search method as the previous one appears once you have carried out a search. Press **CLR** to show the Search Phonebook display.
- You cannot display the Search Phonebook display even when you press  when the Stand-by display appears on the horizontal display.




Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>All?</b>	You can bring up all Phonebook entries. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook list. (See page 99)</li> </ul>
<b>Reading?</b>	You can enter the reading of the other party's name from the first character and search. You do not need to enter the full reading. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Enter a part of the reading</b> </li> <li>The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook list. (See page 99)</li> </ul>
<b>Group?</b>	You can bring up Phonebook entries stored in the specified group. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select a group.</b></li> <li>The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook list. (See page 99)</li> <li>If you press  (<b>FUNC</b>) on the Group list, the Function menu for "Group setting" is displayed.</li> </ul>
<b>Memory No.?</b> [FOMA phone only]	You can search for the entry by the memory number assigned when it was stored in the Phonebook. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Enter the memory number.</b></li> <li>Enter from "000" through "999" in three digits.</li> <li>The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook list. (See page 99)</li> <li>From the Stand-by display, you can press  and then press  to display the Memory No. Dial display. From there you can make a voice call by entering the memory number of the phone number.</li> </ul>
<b>Name?</b>	You can enter the other party's name from the first character and search. You do not need to enter the full name. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Enter a part of the name</b> </li> </ul>

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Phone number?</b>	You can enter a part of the other party's phone number and search. You can search for the entry even from the middle of phone number. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Enter a part of the phone number</b> </li> <li>You can display the Phonebook list also by entering a part of the phone number from the Stand-by display or the "Talking" display, and pressing .</li> </ul>
<b>Mail address?</b>	You can enter a part of the other party's mail address and search. You can search for the entry even from the middle of mail address. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Enter a part of the mail address</b> </li> </ul>
<b>2-touch dial?</b> [FOMA phone only]	You can bring up the list of Phonebook entries in memory number 000 through 009. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Phonebook entries not yet stored or being set with secret are displayed as &lt;---&gt;.</li> </ul>

### 2 **Select an entry** or (**Dial**)

- When the entry contains multiple phone numbers, or when you searched by "Mail address?", press  from the detailed display to select a phone number.
- You can make a videophone call by pressing  (**V phone**) or PushTalk call by pressing .

#### Information

- In a search method other than "Group?" and "2-touch dial?", enter nothing and press ; then you can search all through the Phonebook.
- When no Phonebook entry is found that matches the condition you entered by "Reading?" or "Memory No.?", the entry that is the closest to the condition is displayed.

#### Search order

The Phonebook entries are searched in the order of readings you entered for storing, as follows:

"Space at the beginning of the reading" → "Japanese syllabary (ア、イ、ウ、エ、オ、...ン)" → "Alphabet (A, a, B, b, ...Z, z)" → "Numerals (0 through 9)" → "Symbols" → "No reading".

For "All?" and "Reading?", searching is done in the following order:

"Japanese syllabary (ア、イ、ウ、エ、オ、...ン)" → "Alphabet (A, a, B, b, ...Z, z)" → "Space at the beginning of the reading" → "Numerals (0 through 9)" → "Symbols" → "No reading".

※ The Memory No. Search searches in the order of the memory numbers.

## About Phonebook List

When you search from "All?", "Reading?", "Group?", or "Memory No.?", the tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook list. With "All?" and "Reading?", the entries are sorted by every column of reading, with "Memory No.?" by every 100 of the memory number, and with "Group?" by every group.

Press to display the Phonebook entries in the tab at left or right. However, when there are 12 or more Phonebook entries in a tab, pressing (Page ▲), (Page ▼), or brings up the previous or next page.

● After you search by "Reading?", you can move the cursor to the "ア" through "ワ", "英", and "他" tab by pressing each numeric key from the list. When you successively press the same numeric key, you can move the cursor within the same column.

<Example> Press to display the "ナ" tab. Each time you press , the cursor moves to the top of "ニ" "又" and so on.

● After you search by "Group?", you can move the cursor to the top of each column in the tab by pressing each numeric key from the list. When you successively press the same numeric key, you can move the cursor within the same column.

<Example> Press to move the cursor to the top of the "ナ" column. Each time you press , the cursor moves to the top of "ニ" "又" and so on.

● After you search by "Memory No.?", you can move the cursor to the "000~" to "900~" tab by pressing each numeric key from the list.

<Example> Press to move the cursor to the "500~" tab.

● You can make a voice call to the phone number stored for the name highlighted on the Phonebook list, by pressing . Also, press (V\_phone) to make a videophone call and press to make a PushTalk call. When multiple phone numbers are stored for the name, the one stored first will be dialed.

● appears for the Phonebook entries set to A by Phonebook 2in1 Setting, appears for the Phonebook entries set to B, and appears for the Phonebook entries set to common data. (Only in Dual Mode)

● When you refer to the Phonebook entries, appears for the Phonebook entries which contain the location information.



## About the detailed display

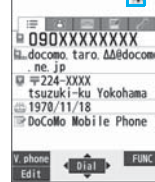
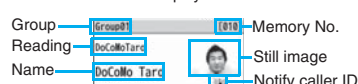
Use to highlight a tab, then the detailed contents are displayed.

● For the Phonebook entry stored on the UIM, is displayed on the memory number field.

● When Notify Caller ID is set to "Notify caller", appears, and when set to "Don't notify", appears.

● Under the still image, appears for the Phonebook entries set to A by Phonebook 2in1 Setting, appears for the Phonebook entries set to B, and appears for the Phonebook entries set to common data. (Only in Dual Mode)

● When a Phonebook entry contains the setting for Multi Number or Chaku-moji, the set contents are displayed in the Item list/Phone Number display.



### Item list

The first stored phone number, mail address, postal address, birthday, and memo are displayed.

### Phone number

### Mail address

● When you select the item, you can compose an i-mode mail message with that mail address entered into the address field.

### Personal information

● When you select a postal address, memo, or still image, the full display appears. Press (EXIT) or to return to the former display. When you select the location information, the Function menu of the location information appears. (See page 279)

### Settings

● When you select each item, a demo is played back. Press (Stop) or to end the demo.

&lt;Edit Phonebook&gt;

## Editing Phonebook Entries

### 1 Detailed Phonebook display

▶ Select an item to be edited ▶ Edit the contents.

- See step 2 on page 92 for how to edit the Phonebook entry.
- Even if you edit the Phonebook entry in the FOMA phone (Phone), you can remain the original contents in the original location and store the edited contents in the different location by changing the memory number.

### 2 (Finish) ▶ YES

- If you edited the UIM Phonebook entry, select "Overwrite" to overwrite the original contents, or "Add" to save the contents as a new entry.


&lt;Delete Data&gt;

## Deleting Phonebook Entries

### Delete from the Detailed Phonebook Display

#### 1 Detailed Phonebook display (FUNC) ▶ Delete data

▶ Select an item ▶ YES



- You can delete an item highlighted by pressing  from the detailed display or delete the Phonebook entry.

### Delete from the Phonebook List

#### 1 Phonebook list (FUNC) ▶ Delete data

▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Delete this	▶ YES

Item	Operation/Explanation
Delete selected	<p>▶ Put a check mark for Phonebook entries to be deleted</p> <p>▶  (Finish) ▶ YES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can check or uncheck all items by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Select all in tab/Select all/Release all in tab/Release all".</li> <li>• Perform the same operation as that of "Delete all" when you have selected all Phonebook entries including secret ones.</li> </ul>
Delete all in tab	You can delete all the Phonebook entries for the displayed tab. ▶ YES
Delete all	You can delete all Phonebook entries including secret entries. ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES ▶ YES



### Information

- When you delete a Phonebook entry that is stored in the PushTalk Phonebook, the PushTalk Phonebook entry is also deleted.

&lt;No. of Phonebook&gt;

## Checking Number of Phonebook Entries

### 1 Phonebook ▶ No. of phonebook

- Phone  
Phonebook . . . . .The number of Phonebook entries stored in the FOMA phone (Phone)
- Secret . . . . .The number of Phonebook entries stored as secret data during Secret Mode or Secret Data Only
- Image. . . . .The number of Phonebook entries in which still images are stored
- Chara-den . . . . .The number of Phonebook entries in which Chara-den images are stored
- PushTalk . . . . .The number of Phonebook entries stored in the PushTalk Phonebook
- Voice dial. . . . .The number of Phonebook entries set as voice dial entries
- Rest . . . . . : The number of phone numbers that can still be stored
-  : The number of mail addresses that can still be stored
- UIM  
Phonebook . . . . .The number of Phonebook entries stored on the UIM

## Information

- While you are using 2in1, the number of displayable Phonebook entries for each mode is displayed. (See page 459)

# Making Full Use of Phonebooks

## Function Menu of the Phonebook List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>New</b>	You can store a new Phonebook entry. Go to step 1 on page 92.
<b>Sort</b>	You can change the display order. ▶ <b>Select a type of order.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You can sort Phonebook entries in reverse order by selecting "Ascending" or "Descending".</li><li>• You cannot sort on the Phonebook list with tabs displayed.</li></ul>
<b>Attach to mail</b>	You can send an i-mode mail message with the Phonebook entry attached. Go to step 2 on page 198.
<b>Send Ir data (Send phonebook)</b>	See page 370.
<b>Send Ir data (Send all phonebook)</b>	See page 371.
<b>☎ transmission (Send phonebook)</b>	See page 372.
<b>☎ transmission (Send all phonebook)</b>	See page 372.
<b>Send to Bluetooth (Send phonebook)</b>	You can send the Phonebook entry using Bluetooth communication. ▶ <b>Send phonebook</b> ▶ <b>Select a Bluetooth device to be sent</b> ▶ <b>YES</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When no Bluetooth devices are registered, the confirmation display appears asking whether to search.</li><li>• See page 427 for registering and connecting Bluetooth devices.</li></ul>

## Function menu

## Operation/Explanation

<b>Send to Bluetooth (Send all phonebook)</b>	You can send all Phonebook entries using Bluetooth communication. ▶ <b>Send all phonebook</b> ▶ <b>Select a Bluetooth device to be sent</b> ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When "Session number setting" of "Bluetooth settings" is set to "ON", enter your Terminal Security Code and then a session number.</li><li>• When no Bluetooth devices are registered, the confirmation display appears asking whether to search.</li><li>• See page 427 for registering and connecting Bluetooth devices.</li></ul>
<b>Copy to microSD</b>	See page 357.
<b>Connect to Center</b>	See page 105.
<b>Delete data</b>	See page 100.
<b>Character size</b>	You can switch the character size for the Phonebook and on the displays within "Phonebook settings", etc. (See "Phonebook" on page 129)
<b>Set secret/Release secret</b>	You can activate/deactivate Secret for the Phonebook entry. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If you select "Set secret" in ordinary mode (not in "Secret mode" or "Secret data only"), enter your Terminal Security Code.</li></ul>



## Information



### <Send to Bluetooth>

- You cannot send Phonebook entries from the UIM.
- See page 425 for the Bluetooth function.

## Function Menu of the Detailed Phonebook Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Notify caller ID</b>	See page 47.
<b>Prefix numbers</b>	See page 62.
<b>Int'l dial assist</b>	See page 61.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
2in1 dial	You can select a phone number to notify the other party in Dual Mode of 2in1. (See page 458)
Multi number	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party. (See page 456)
Chaku-moji	See page 57.
Restrictions	See page 142.
Edit data	Go to step 1 of "Editing Phonebook Entries" on page 100.
Delete data	See page 100.
Store in P-Talk PB	You can store the phone number in the PushTalk Phonebook.
Add desktop icon	See page 127.
Compose message	You can compose an i-mode mail message to send to the mail address. Go to step 3 on page 198.
Compose SMS	You can compose an SMS message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 244.
Attach to mail	You can send an i-mode mail message with the Phonebook entry attached. Go to step 2 on page 198.
Send Ir data (Send phonebook)	See page 370.
Send Ir data (Send all phonebook)	See page 371.
 transmission (Send phonebook)	See page 372.
 transmission (Send all phonebook)	See page 372.
Send to Bluetooth (Send phonebook)	See page 101.
Send to Bluetooth (Send all phonebook)	See page 101.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Copy to microSD	See page 357.
Connect to Center	See page 105.
Copy name	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can paste the copied text to a mail message and others.</li> </ul>
Copy phone number/ Copy mail add./ Copy address/ Copy location info/ Copy birthday/ Copy memo	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the detailed display, press  to highlight an item to be copied. The items in the Function menu differ depending on the highlighted item.</li> <li>You can paste the copied text to a mail message and others.</li> </ul>
Secret code	<p>You need to add the recipient's secret code when sending i-mode mail to anyone who has registered a secret code. Once you set the secret code for the mail address in the Phonebook entry, it will be added automatically whenever you send mail to that address.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>Set code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the detailed display, press  to highlight a phone number or mail address to be set with a secret code.</li> <li>To check the secret code, select "Check code".</li> <li>To release the secret code, select "Release code".</li> </ul> <p>▶ <b>Enter a four-digit secret code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the Function menu, "Secret code" is indicated by "★", after it is set.</li> <li>Enter a four-digit number for secret code. You cannot set "0000".</li> </ul>
Character size	You can switch the character size for the Phonebook and on the displays within "Phonebook settings", etc. (See "Phonebook" on page 129)
Set secret/Release secret	See page 101.



Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Copy to UIM/ Copy from UIM	See page 422.
Select image	See page 78.
Sort phone number/ Sort mail address	<p>▶ Select a phone number or mail address</p> <p>▶ Use  to change the order ▶  (Select)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the detailed display, press  to highlight an item to be sorted. The items in the Function menu differ depending on the highlighted item.</li> <li>To change the order in succession, repeat the above steps.</li> </ul> <p>▶  (Finish)</p>

### Information

#### <Secret code>

- You cannot set secret codes for UIM Phonebook entries.
- The secret code can be added only when the recipient's mail address is in the form of "phone number" or "phone number@docomo.ne.jp". It cannot be added to any other form of mail address.
- If you have stored the mail address as "phone number+secret code@docomo.ne.jp", you cannot reply to mail messages from the party of that mail address. After changing the mail address to "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", set the secret code.

### <Two-touch Dial>

## Making a Call with a Few Touches

When the entry is stored in memory number "000" through "009" in the FOMA phone's Phonebook, you can dial the phone number just by pressing the lowest one digit of memory number and .

### 1 Numeric key () to ) ▶ or (Dial)

- You can make a videophone call by pressing (V. phone) or a PushTalk call by pressing .

### Information

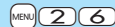
- When the Phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the first phone number will be dialed.
- When you set "Restrict dialing" to a Phonebook entry of memory number 000 through 009, set it to the first phone number in the Phonebook entry.
- When you store a Phonebook entry of memory number from 000 through 009 as secret data, make a call to that entry in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only.

### <Voice Dial>

## Accessing Phonebook Entries by Voice

Just vocalize the other party's voice dial name and then the Phonebook entry is accessed for making a call.

### Voice Dial Setting



You can store up to 100 voice dial entries selecting from among the Phonebook entries stored in the FOMA phone (Phone).

### 1 ▶ Phonebook ▶ Phonebook settings ▶ Voice dial setting ▶ <New>

- You can edit the stored voice dial name by pressing (Edit). Go to step 3.
- To delete the stored voice dial entry, press (FUNC) and select "Delete" or "Delete all" and then select "YES".

### 2 Search the Phonebook ▶ Select a Phonebook entry.

The display for search method you used last time appears.

- The "★" mark is added to the Phonebook entry stored in the Voice Dial list.

### 3 Enter a voice dial name.

- You can enter up to 22 half-pitch katakana characters.
- The reading (katakana only) of the Phonebook entry is displayed as the voice dial name. Correct the name to the easy-to-identify words.

**Information**

- The voice dial name set by this function is effective only for calling up a voice dial entry. For the voice guidance function, the reading (name) stored in the Phonebook is read aloud.
- When multiple similar voice dial names are stored or when the voice dial name is short, the recognition rate lowers and a wrong voice dial entry (Phonebook entry) might be accessed. In this case, rename the existing voice dial name and store it.
- You cannot store “ボイスセットイ (Boisusettei)” as a voice dial name.


**Dial from Phonebook by Voice**


By your voice, you can access the Phonebook entry you set in the Voice Dial list. When “Read aloud settings” is set to “ON” and “Voice dial” is checked, the operation is guided by the voice guidance.

**1**  (for at least one second)






▶ As soon as the voice recognition start tone sounds, vocalize the voice dial name.

Start vocalizing within four seconds after the voice recognition start tone sounds. Once the voice is recognized as a voice dial entry, the detected result is displayed.

- You cannot change the volume of the voice recognition start tone. The voice recognition start tone does not sound during Manner Mode.
- If you say the word “ボイス設定 (Boisusettei)”, the display of “Voice settings” appears. (See page 105)
- When “Auto voice dial” is set to “ON”, the display for Auto Voice Dial appears after the voice is recognized as a voice dial entry. Then about two seconds later, the FOMA phone automatically dials out.
- You cannot access a voice dial entry even when you press and hold  for at least one second when the Stand-by display appears on the horizontal display.

**2** Highlight a detected result and press  or  **Dial**.

The first phone number in the selected Phonebook entry is dialed.

- You can bring up the detailed Phonebook display by pressing  **Detail**. Highlight a phone number and press  or  **Dial** to make a voice call. Also, you can make a videophone call by pressing  **Video phone** or a PushTalk call by pressing .



**Information**

- When you vocalize, keep your mouth away from the microphone about 10 cm. If your voice is too distant, it may be difficult to recognize your voice.
- Pronounce the voice dial name as clearly as possible.
- Before and after voice production, avoid making the sounds unrelated to the voice dial name such as clearing your throat, clicking your tongue, noisy breathing or other noise.
- Vocalize in quiet, noise-free locations.
- While vocalizing, do not put your fingers over the microphone, or press or brush the keys.

**To access a voice dial entry using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch**

You need to set “Voice earphone dial” to “ON” and open the FOMA phone in advance.

**1** Press and hold the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) for at least one second.**2** Perform the operations in step 1 and step 2 of “Dial from Phonebook by Voice” on page 104.


- You can make a call also by pressing the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch instead of pressing  or .

**To access a voice dial entry using a Bluetooth device**

You can access a voice dial entry with the FOMA phone closed as well. You need to set “Voice earphone dial” to “ON” in advance, and connect with the Bluetooth device using the Headset service or Hands-free service.

- For using the Hands-free service, the Bluetooth device needs to support a voice recognition function.

**1** Press the switch of the Bluetooth device.

- You can access a voice dial entry also by pressing and holding  for at least one second when the FOMA phone is closed.

## 2 Access a voice dial entry following the voice guidance.

Once the voice is recognized as a voice dial entry, the detected result is displayed.

- The FOMA phone automatically dials out about two seconds after the voice guidance informing of dialing finishes.

### Voice Settings

## 1 Settings ▶ Other settings ▶ Voice settings ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Auto voice dial</b>	You can automatically make a call to the phone number accessed by voice. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Voice earphone dial</b>	You can access the voice dial entries by using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) or Wireless Earphone Set 02 (option). ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Read aloud settings</b>	See page 406.
<b>Read aloud volume</b>	See page 407.
<b>Read aloud speed</b>	See page 407.
<b>Read aloud output</b>	See page 407.
<b>Read aloud valid set.</b>	See page 407.

### <Data Security Service>

## Saving (Restoring/Updating) Phonebook to Data Storage Center

You can save the Phonebook stored in your FOMA phone to the Data Storage Center. You can use restoration of the saved Phonebook and automatic update settings from “Data Security Service Site” [ Menu→English iMenu→My Menu→電話帳お預かり (Data Security Service)] on the i-mode.

Data Security Service is a pay service that is available on a subscription basis.

- You cannot use Data Security Service when you are out of the service area.
- For details on Data Security Service, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

## 1 LifeKit ▶ Data Security Service ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Connect to Center</b>	▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Sent/recv. PB data list</b>	You can display the records of communication such as saving the list Phonebook, mail messages, or images to the Data Storage Center. ▶ <b>Select a record.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Select a communication completion time in the list to switch to the detailed display.</li></ul>
<b>PB image sending</b>	You can set whether to save images set for the Phonebook entries to the Data Storage Center. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>

### Information

#### <Connect to Center>

- You cannot save the UIM Phonebook.
- When the Phonebook entries saved to the Data Storage Center exceeds the number of Phonebook entries storable in the FOMA phone’s Phonebook, the excess entries cannot be updated.

**Information****<Sent/recv. PB data list>**

- Up to 30 records are saved. When more than 30 records are saved, the older records are overwritten.

**<PB image sending>**

- You cannot save the images whose output from FOMA phone is prohibited.


**Auto-update**

On the site of the Data Storage Center, you can set so as to periodically update and save the Phonebook entries in your FOMA phone to the Data Storage Center.



- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

**Downloading the Phonebook entries from the Data Storage Center to your FOMA phone**

Note that if you delete the Phonebook entries from your FOMA phone and execute auto-update, the Phonebook entries on the Data Storage Center are also deleted. When you download the Phonebook entries from the Data Storage Center to your FOMA phone, do the following operations to restore them.

1.  Menu ▶ English iMenu ▶ My Menu ▶ 電話帳お預かり (Data Security Service) ▶ お預かりセンター (Data Storage Center) ▶ Enter the i-mode password.
2. Select "ケータイへダウンロード (Download to mobile phone)" from the Phonebook entries on the Data Storage Center ▶ OK
  - About 15 seconds later, download starts.

**Information**

- The Phonebook is not automatically updated while another function is working at the time of Auto-update.
- If the Phonebook cannot be updated, the notification icon of "  " (PB in Center updated) appears on the Stand-by display. Select "  Update " and the update display appears if Auto-update is set. If Auto-update is not set, the update display appears after you enter your Terminal Security Code.

# Sound/Screen/Light Settings

## Sound Settings

Changing Ring Tone. . . . . <Select Ring Tone>	108
Setting Sound Effects of Ring Tone or Melody . . . . . <Melody Effect>	109
Informing You of an Incoming Call by Vibration . . . <Vibrator>	110
Using Recorded Sound as Ring Tone . . . <Voice Announce>	110
Changing Calling Tone. . . . . <Melody Call Setting>	110
Setting Keypad Sound . . . . . <Keypad Sound>	111
Setting Charging-start/end Tones. . . . . <Charge Sound>	111
Sounding Alarm when a Line is Likely to be Disconnected . . . . . <Quality Alarm>	111
Setting Ring Time for Mail and Messages R/F . . . . . <Mail/Message Ring Time>	111
Sounding Ring Tone from Earphone Only . . . . . <Headset Usage Setting>	112
Silencing Tones from FOMA Phone . . . . . <Manner Mode>	112
Selecting Manner Mode Type . . . . . <Manner Mode Set>	113

## Screen/Light Settings

Changing Displays. . . . . <Display Setting>	115
Displaying an Image Stored in Phonebook during Ringing . . . . . <Display Phonebook Image>	117
Setting Displays for Private Window . . . . . <Private Window>	117
Displaying Arrival Information by Opening FOMA Phone . . . . . <Received Mail/Call at Open>	118
Setting Lights for Display and Keypad . . . . . <Backlight>	118
Adjusting Quality of Display Automatically . . . . . <LCD AI>	119
Making Display Hard to See from People Around . . . . . <View Blind>	119
Setting Quality of Display . . . . . <Image Quality>	119
Setting Color Combination for Display . . . . . <Color Theme Setting>	119
Setting Display of Main Menu. . . . . <Menu Icon Setting>	120
Using Kisekae Tool . . . . . <Kisekae Tool>	121
Setting Display of Horizontal Open Menu . . . . . <Horizontal Open Menu>	122
Using Feel * Mail . . . . . <Feel * Mail>	122
Setting Color of Call/Charging Indicator and Others . . . . . <Illumination>	122
Checking Missed Calls and New Mail by Tone and Call/Charging Indicator . . . . . <Info Notice Setting>	124
Using Icons on Desktop . . . . . <Desktop Icon>	125
Changing Character Font . . . . . <Font>	128
Changing Character Size . . . . . <Character Size>	129
Setting Clock Display . . . . .	130

<Select Ring Tone>

MENU 1 3

## Changing Ring Tone

You can set ring tones by incoming type.

If you select an i-motion movie, the i-motion movie and sound are played back for incoming calls/messages. (Chaku-motion)

- The ring tone is the PCM sound source, chord of 128 tones, and ADPCM compliant.
- See "Add to Phonebook" for setting a ring tone by Phonebook entry, and see "Group Setting" for setting it by group.

### Ring Tone list (pre-installed)

Display	Title	The Name of Lyricist/Composer
Pattern 1	—	—
Pattern 2	—	—
Pattern 3	—	—
Pattern 4	—	—
Pattern 5	—	—
I GOT RHYTHM / INST *1	I GOT RHYTHM / INST	Composer: GERSHWIN GEORGE
TRITSCH TRATSCH POLK*1	TRITSCH TRATSCH POLKA OP 214	Composer: STRAUSS JUN JOHANN
ETUDE NO 12/12 ETUDE	ETUDE NO 12/12 ETUDES OP 10	Composer: CHOPIN FREDERIC FRANCOIS
EL COLIBRI	EL COLIBRI	Composer: SAGRERAS JULIO S
HABANERA/CARMEN *1	HABANERA/CARMEN	Composer: BIZET GEORGES
LA FILLE AUX CHEVEUX*1	LA FILLE AUX CHEVEUX DE LIN	Composer: DEBUSSY CLAUDE ACHILLE
SOMEDAY MY PRINCE	SOMEDAY MY PRINCE WILL COME	Composer: CHURCHILL FRANK E
SUMMERTIME	SUMMERTIME	Composer: GERSHWIN GEORGE
3D Eye Catch*1	—	—
3D Sound*1	—	—
3D Lighter*1	—	—
3D Magical Stick*1	—	—
3D Garden Terrace*1	—	—
Waterdrop	—	—

Display	Title	The Name of Lyricist/Composer
Mail 1	—	—
Mail 2	—	—
美ら海 カクマミ*2	美ら海 カクマミ (CHURAUMI KAKUREKUMANOMI)	—

\*1 3D sound is supported. See page 109 for 3D sound.

\*2 i-motion movie

(Note) The names of lyricists and composers are described conforming to the JASRAC web page.

Whole part of long titles may not be displayed due to restriction of the display size.

## 1 Settings ▶ Sound ▶ Select ring tone ▶ Select an incoming type.

- Select an item and press to check the contents actually played back or displayed.

## 2 Select ring tone ▶ Select a type of ring tone.

**Melody** ..... Sets a melody as a ring tone.

**MUSIC** ..... Sets a Chaku-uta Full® music file as a ring tone.

**i motion** ..... Sets an i-motion movie as a ring tone. (Chaku-motion/Chaku-uta®)

**Voice announce** ... Sets the sound recorded by "Voice announce" as a ring tone. The setting is completed.

**OFF** ..... Sets a ring tone off. The setting is completed.

## 3 Select a folder ▶ Select a ring tone.

- If you select "MUSIC" in step 2, select "Fullsong ring tone" or "Point ring tone". (See page 398)

- See page 186 when you select "Search by i-mode".

### Information

• You can set the Call Receiving display by selecting "Phone" or "Videophone", and then by selecting "Select calling disp.". Go to step 2 on page 116.

• You can set the Mail Receiving display by selecting "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" or "MessageF", and then by selecting "Select receiving disp.". Go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 115.

## Information

- The priority order of ring tones is as follows: "Read aloud settings" → "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Select ring tone". When a call comes in to the additional number, the ring tone specified by "Set as ring tone" of "Multi number" sounds.  
If a call comes in to Number B while using 2in1, the priority order of the ring tones is as follows: "Read aloud settings" → "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Ringtone set. for No. B" (see page 457).
- The ring tone or images set at purchase might be played back or displayed for incoming calls or messages, depending on the combination of this function and "Display setting".
- See "i-motion info" to check whether the i-motion movie can be set for a ring tone.
- When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for a mail ring tone, you can press **[CLR]** or others to stop the ring tone.
- When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for a ring tone (Chaku-motion), it is played back taking priority over "Display setting". However, if you set a voice-only i-motion movie for the ring tone, the image set by "Display setting" is displayed.
- When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for "Select calling disp.", the i-motion movie is played back taking priority over this function for incoming calls. However, if you set an i-motion movie containing only video for "Select calling disp.", the ring tone selected for this function is played back for incoming calls.
- You cannot set an i-motion movie which contains video as a PushTalk ring tone.
- When different types of mail — i-mode mail, SMS messages, chat mail, or Messages R/F — are received at the same time, the priority order of ring tone is as follows: "Chat mail" → "i-mode mail/SMS" → "MessageR" → "MessageF". If you receive the same type of mail simultaneously, the ring tone corresponding to the mail you have received last works.
- For the melody downloaded from a site or attached to mail, or the melody prohibited to attach to mail or output from the FOMA phone, a playing part may be specified in advance. When the play-part-specified melody is set for the ring tone, only the specified part is played back.

## <Melody Effect>



# Setting Sound Effects of Ring Tone or Melody

You can set whether to add stereophonic sound effects to the playback tone of melodies and i-motion movies, ring tones, and effect tones.

- 1 **[MENU]** ▶ Settings ▶ Sound ▶ Melody effect  
▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Stereo&amp;3DSound</b>	Plays back 3-dimensional sound from the stereo-speakers. Effective for the i-appli effect tones or ring tones. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Position to play</b>	Sets the play start position of the melody that has been set for the ring tone or alarm tone. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>Play all</b> . . . . . Plays back from the beginning of the melody. <b>Play portion</b> . . . . . Plays back from the start position set for the melody.

## 3D Sound

3D Sound is a function that creates the stereophonic sound and the sound moving through the space, using the stereo-speakers (or stereo-earphone set). 3D Sound compatible i-appli games, ring tones, and i-motion movies enable you to enjoy live-like feeling of sounds.

To enjoy the powerful 3D Sound and to get the best performance, keep the FOMA phone about 40 cm away from you, holding it in front of you.

Note that the sound effects may be weakened if you hold the FOMA phone to the left or right from the front or if it is too close to or too far from you even in front of you.

## Information

- Stereognostic sense might differ depending on the person. If you feel strange, switch "Stereo&3DSound" to "OFF".

&lt;Vibrator&gt;

MENU 5 4

## Informing You of an Incoming Call by Vibration

You can set the vibrator to notify you of incoming calls and mail.

- 1  ► **Settings** ► **Incoming call** ► **Vibrator**  
 ► **Select an incoming type** ► **Select a vibration pattern.**

**Pattern 1** . . . . . Alternates between vibration on (about 0.5 second) and off (about 0.5 second).

**Pattern 2** . . . . . Alternates between vibration on (about 1 second) and off (about 1 second).

**Pattern 3** . . . . . Alternates between vibration on (about 3 seconds) and off (about 1 second).


**Melody linkage** . . . Vibrates in time with the vibration pattern stored in the melody.

**OFF** . . . . . Does not vibrate.

- While you are selecting a pattern, the FOMA phone vibrates by the selected pattern for confirmation. However, it does not vibrate if you select "Melody linkage".
- The following icons are displayed on the Stand-by display while the vibrator is set:

: Vibrates for incoming voice calls, PushTalk calls or videophone calls.

: Vibrates for incoming mail, chat mail or Messages R/F.

: Vibrates for incoming voice calls, PushTalk calls or videophone calls, and vibrates for incoming mail, chat mail or Messages R/F.

### Information

- The priority order of vibrators is as follows: "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Vibrator".
- The vibrator vibrates at a regular strength, regardless of the ring volume level.
- Even when "Melody linkage" is set, the FOMA phone vibrates with "Pattern 2" if an i-motion movie or melody with no vibration pattern is set for the ring tone.
- Be careful not to leave the FOMA phone on a desk or similar places with the vibrator activated; when a call comes in, the FOMA phone might move and fall by vibration.

&lt;Voice Announce&gt;







MENU 5 5

## Using Recorded Sound as Ring Tone

You can set the sound you recorded with the FOMA phone for a ring tone (including a ring tone for Number B of 2in1), On hold tone/Holding tone, alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", "ToDo", and "Book program", and an answer message for Record Message.

You can record only one item for about 15 seconds.

- 1  ► **LifeKit** ► **Rec.msg/voice memo** ► **Voice announce**  
 ► **Record**

- To suspend recording midway, press , , or . The contents recorded to that point are saved.
- The tone beeps about 5 seconds before the recording time (for about 15 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the tone beeps twice, and the former display returns.
- The recording is suspended when a call comes in, when an alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", "ToDo", "Book program", or "Timer recording" sounds, or when you switch displays using Multitask during recording. (The contents recorded to that point are saved.)
- To play back the recorded sound, select "Play". To suspend playback midway, press , , or .
- To erase the recorded sound, select "Erase", then select "YES".


&lt;Melody Call Setting&gt;

## Changing Calling Tone

**Melody Call is a service that changes the ringing tone phone callers hear, to a melody you like.**

For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

- Melody call is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.

- 1  ► **Settings** ► **Melody Call setting** ► **YES**  
 ► **Operate following the instructions on the display.**



### Information

- Melody Call is not available for incoming videophone calls and PushTalk calls.
- When you select "YES" from the confirmation display asking whether to connect to the site, the line is connected to the i-mode site. You are not charged a packet communication fee for connecting to the site for settings, however, you are charged for connecting to the IP site, i-mode menu site, and free melody corner.

### <Keypad Sound>

MENU 3 0

## Setting Keypad Sound

1 Settings ▶ Sound ▶ Keypad sound ▶ ON or OFF

### Information

- The sound volume for keypad sound cannot be changed.
- If you set this function to "OFF", the battery level tone (see page 44) and respective warning tones do not sound.
- The keypad does not make a sound when you press , during ringing, or during playback of a moving image or i-motion movie.
- When you press with your FOMA phone closed, the FOMA phone works according to "Info notice setting" on page 124.

### <Charge Sound>

## Setting Charging-start/end Tones

The confirmation tone sounds twice when charging starts/ends.

1 Settings ▶ Other settings ▶ Battery ▶ Charge sound ▶ ON or OFF

### Information

- The sound volume for charge sound cannot be changed.
- The charging confirmation tone does not sound when a display other than the Stand-by display is shown or during Manner Mode or Public Mode (Drive Mode).

### <Quality Alarm>

MENU 7 5

## Sounding Alarm when a Line is Likely to be Disconnected

When a call is likely to be disconnected midway due to bad radio wave conditions, an alarm sounds to inform you right before disconnection.

1 Settings ▶ Talk ▶ Quality alarm ▶ Select an alarm.

No tone . . . . . Does not sound.

High tone . . . . . High alarm sounds.

Low tone . . . . . Low alarm sounds.

### Information

- You might be disconnected without hearing an alarm if radio wave conditions deteriorate suddenly.
- An alarm for "Quality alarm" sounds only from the earpiece during a videophone call.

### <Mail/Message Ring Time>

MENU 6 8

## Setting Ring Time for Mail and Messages R/F

You can set the duration of the ring tone which sounds for incoming i-mode mail, SMS messages, Chat mail and Messages R/F.

1 Settings ▶ Sound ▶ Mail/Msg. ring time ▶ Select a type of mail or message ▶ ON or OFF ▶ Enter a ring time (seconds).

- Enter in two digits from "01" through "30".

## Sounding Ring Tone from Earphone Only

You can set where you make the ring tone and alarm sound from for when you connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option).

- 1 Settings > Sound > Headset usage setting > Headset and speaker or Headset only

### Information

- Even when you set "Headset only", the ring tone sounds from both the earphone and speaker about 20 seconds after ringing starts. However, the tone does not sound from the speaker but sounds from the earphone only even after 20 seconds have elapsed if the tone sounds for the operations other than incoming calls, incoming mail, and alarm notification.
- Even when you set "Headset only", the tone sounds from the speaker when you do not connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch or when you start shooting still or moving images.
- In the following cases, the tone sounds from the earphone when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch is connected, and from the speakers when it is not connected, regardless of this setting:
  - During watching a 1Seg program
  - During playback of a video file
  - During playback of an i-motion movie
  - During playback of a music file by MUSIC Player
  - During playback of a melody
  - During playback of a Music&Video Channel program
  - While an i-oppli program is running
- Do not wind the cord of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch around the FOMA phone.
- The FOMA phone may pick up noise if you take the cord of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch close to the FOMA phone during a call.

## Silencing Tones from FOMA Phone

Just by pressing a key, you can set to silence tones such as a ring tone and keypad sound from the FOMA phone.

You can use "Manner mode set" to select Manner Mode functions from three types; "Manner mode", "Super silent", or "Original". While "Manner mode" or "Super silent" is activated, or while "Mic sensitiv." is set to "Up" in "Original", you can talk softly on the phone but your voice can still be heard clearly at the other end.

- 1 During standby/During a call > (for at least one second)

Manner mode selected in "Manner mode set" is set.

- When the FOMA phone is closed, press and hold for at least one second to activate Manner Mode.
- During Manner Mode, "" is displayed. The settings you selected for "Manner mode set" are also displayed.

: Indicates that "Vibrator" will work to notify events.

: Indicate that "Ring volume" has been set to "Silent".

### Information

- If you activate Manner Mode during a call or calling, the message to that effect appears.
  - The recording start tone sounds even in Manner Mode when you shoot still images or moving images.
  - In Manner Mode, if you try to play back a melody, the confirmation display appears asking whether to play it back. Select "YES" to play back the melody at the volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume". If the setting is "Silent" or "Step", the volume is Level 2.
  - In Manner Mode, if you do the following operations, the confirmation display appears asking whether to play back voice or music.
    - Watching a 1Seg program
    - Playing back an i-motion movie
    - Playing back a video file
    - Playing back a music file by MUSIC Player
    - Playing back a Music&Video Channel program
- Select "YES" to play it back at the volume set for each player. When you change the volume level, it is played back at the set volume for the next time.

## Information

- When a Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, the sound comes out of the earphone. The confirmation display asking whether to play back sound or music files during Manner Mode does not appear. Further, the playback tone does not sound from the speakers even if you unplug the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch during playing back sound or music files by each player.

### To release Manner Mode

Press and hold **[#]** for at least one second. During a call or calling, two beeps sound and the message that is released appears.

- When the FOMA phone is closed, press and hold **[v]** for at least one second to release Manner Mode.

### To activate Manner Mode during ringing

Press **[M]** (Memo) ( **[#]** for PushTalk call) or **[v]**.

Manner Mode is activated and Record Message is simultaneously activated so that the caller can leave a voice/video message.

Even when "Record message setting" has not been set to "ON", the Record Message function works.

Press **[A]** (Answer) or **[A]** (Answer) to answer a voice call, or press **[A]** (Answer), or **[M]** (Subst) to answer a videophone call.

- When five messages for voice calls and two messages for videophone calls have already been recorded, or when a PushTalk call comes in, Record Message does not work. Manner Mode specified by "Manner mode set" works.
- After you finish a call, Manner Mode is still activated.

<Manner Mode Set>

MENU 2 0

## Selecting Manner Mode Type

You can select one of three types of operations for Manner Mode.


### ■ Operations during Manner Mode




	Manner Mode	Super Silent	Original
Record message	Set value of Record message		ON or OFF
Vibrator*1	ON		ON or OFF
Phone volume	Silent		Silent through Level 6 and step ①
Mail volume	Silent		Silent through Level 6 and step ②
Alarm volume*2	Silent		Silent through Level 6 and step
VM tone	ON	OFF	ON or OFF ③
Keypad sound	OFF		ON or OFF ④
Microphone sensitivity	Up		Normal or Up
Low voltage alarm tone (Low battery alarm)	OFF		ON or OFF When "LVA tone" is set to "ON", it works with the same set value as ①.*3
Confirmation tone for selecting ring tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①. ②.
On hold tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.*4
Holding tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.*5
ToruCa obtained tone and ToruCa failed-to-obtain tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.
Confirmation tone for recording voice announce	ON	OFF	Works with the same set value as ③.
Battery level tone	Silent		Silent
Voice recognition start tone	Silent		Silent
Confirmation tone for checking missed calls and new mail	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.*6
Playback tones of attached melody	Silent		Silent
Effect tones of Decome-Anime	Silent		Silent
Warning tones	Silent		Works with the same set value as ④.
Schedule alarm	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.

	Manner Mode	Super Silent	Original
ToDo alarm		Silent	Works with the same set value as ①.
Alarm for Book program		Silent	Works with the same set value as ①.※7
Alarm for Timer recording		Silent	Works with the same set value as ①.※8
Start tones for shooting still and moving images	Level 4		Level 4
Confirmation tone for selecting shutter sound	OFF		Works with the same set value as ①.※4
Switching to Hands-free by "Hands-free w/ V. phone" or "Hands-free w/ PushTalk"	OFF		OFF
Read aloud volume	Silent		Works with the same set value as "Read aloud volume" on page 407.
Effect tones of Flash movies	Silent		Silent

- ※1 Incoming calls and alarms for "Alarm", "Schedule", "ToDo", "Book program" and "Timer recording" are notified by the vibration.  
The vibration pattern is the same as the setting you set on page 110. However, if the setting you set on page 110 is "OFF", "Pattern 2" applies.  
Confirmation tone for checking missed calls and new mail  
· Vibrates for about 1 second when you have missed calls or new mail messages.  
· Vibrates for about 0.2 second when you have no missed calls and new mail messages.
- ※2 When "Prefer manner mode" on page 409 is set to "OFF", the tone sounds at the volume set for Alarm.
- ※3 The tone sounds at Level 1 when ① is "Silent".
- ※4 The tone sounds at Level 2 when ① is "Step".
- ※5 The tone sounds at Level 1 when ① is not "Silent".
- ※6 The tone sounds at Level 6 when ① is not "Silent".
- ※7 When "Prefer manner mode" on page 305 is set to "OFF", the tone sounds at the volume set for Book Program.
- ※8 The tone does not sound when ① is "Step".

You can select from among standard "Manner mode" to inform you of incoming calls or mail by the vibrator, "Super silent" to erase sounds including confirmation tones from the earpiece, or "Original" to customize operations.

- 1  Settings ▶ Incoming call ▶ Manner mode set  
▶ Manner mode, Super silent or Original  
▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Record msg.</b>	▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> ● Even if you select "ON", the ring time is fixed to about 13 seconds and cannot be changed when "Record message setting" on page 71 is set to "OFF". ● See page 71 for Record Message Setting.
<b>Vibrator</b>	You can set the FOMA phone to vibrate for incoming calls and mail. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> ● See page 110 for Vibrator.
<b>Phone vol.</b>	You can adjust the ring volume for incoming voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls. ▶ Use  to adjust the volume. ● See page 68 for Ring Volume.
<b>Mail vol.</b>	You can adjust the ring volume for i-mode mail, SMS messages, and Messages R/F. ▶ Use  to adjust the volume. ● See page 68 for Ring Volume.
<b>Alarm vol.</b>	▶ Use  to adjust the volume. ● See page 408 for Alarm.
<b>VM tone</b>	You can set the FOMA phone to sound a confirmation tone when a record message is played back, a voice memo is recorded or played back, and a movie memo is recorded. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Keypad sound</b>	▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> ● See page 111 for Keypad Sound.
<b>Mic sensitiv.</b>	▶ <b>Normal or Up</b>

Item	Operation/Explanation
LVA tone	▶ ON or OFF ● See page 44 for LVA Tone (low battery alarm).

**2** Press (Finish).

<Display Setting>

## Changing Displays

MENU 5 6

### Set Stand-by Display

You can set an image for the Stand-by display. You can set also i-motion movies shot by the FOMA phone or downloaded from sites for the Stand-by display. You can set it for the vertical display and horizontal display respectively.

**1** ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Display setting  
▶ Stand-by display or Standby disp. Wide  
▶ Select a type of image.

- If you select "Calendar/schedule", select a display format, and then select "BG image ON" or "BG image OFF". If you select "BG image OFF", the setting is completed.  
You cannot select "Calendar (2 months)" or "Calendar (3 months)" for "Standby disp. Wide".
- If you select "i-oppli display", select an i-oppli program. The setting is completed.  
You cannot select "i-oppli display" for "Standby disp. Wide".

**2** Select a folder ▶ Select an image.

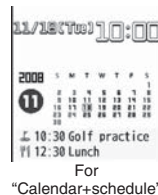
- When the image is larger than the Stand-by display, the overall image is displayed with the dimensions shrunk and proportional ratio retained. Depending on the image size, the image smaller than the Stand-by display is displayed in equivalent dimensions or enlarged two times at both lengthwise and sidewise.
- See page 186 when you select "Search by i-mode".

### When Calendar/schedule is set

You can display schedule events of the day (up to 10) or calendar in the set format on the Stand-by display. You can check the schedule event or calendar and can set schedule events (see page 411) with ease.

You can operate the schedule or calendar by pressing from the Stand-by display on the vertical display. Highlight an item to be operated and press (Select).

- When you select the schedule, you can confirm the previous or next schedule events by pressing . You can display the detailed schedule display by pressing (Select).
- When you select the calendar, you can display the previous or next calendar by pressing . If "Calendar (1 month)", "Calendar (2 months)", or "Calendar (3 months)" is set, you can display the previous or next calendar also by pressing . You can set a schedule event by pressing (Select).



### When an original animation or animation GIF is set

It is played back when you display the Stand-by display, press from the Stand-by display, or open the FOMA phone. The first frame is displayed as the Stand-by display.

### When a Flash movie is set

It is played back when you display the Stand-by display, press from the Stand-by display, or open the FOMA phone. The image stopped such as by your first operation is displayed as the Stand-by display.


### When an i-motion movie is set

It is played back when you display the Stand-by display, press from the Stand-by display, or open the FOMA phone. The first frame is displayed as the Stand-by display.



- Press or during playback to adjust the volume.  
Press , , , , , , , , or to end the playback.
- If you play back an i-motion movie during Manner Mode, the sound is not played back.

## Not to display icons on the Stand-by display

Press  from the Stand-by display.

Calendar, schedule events, status icons, notification icons, and desktop icons are cleared. Press  again to show the icons and others.

When a Flash movie is set as the Stand-by display, however, the following operations are performed:

- When you press  during playback of a Flash movie, the playback pauses. Press  again to clear the icons and others.

### Information

- The schedule list shows the today's schedule events whose start time has not come, and the today's schedule events set as "Whole day". "Holiday" and "Anniversary" are not displayed.
- Some i-motion movies might not be correctly displayed.
- You cannot set a still image which is in excess of 300 Kbytes for the Stand-by display.
- You cannot set some images or i-motion movies for the Stand-by display.
- The sound of Flash movies cannot be played back.

## Set the Wake-up Display

You can set an image or message to be displayed for when the power is turned on.

### 1 Settings ▶ Display ▶ Display setting ▶ Wake-up display ▶ Select a type of image.

- If you select "Message", enter a message. You can enter up to 50 full-pitch/100 half-pitch characters.
- If you select "My picture" or "i-motion", go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 115.
- See page 186 when you select "Search by i-mode".


### Information

- You cannot set some images or i-motion movies for the Wake-up display.
- The sound of Flash movies cannot be played back.

## Set Displays for Dialing/Calling and Others

You can set an image for the Dialing/Call Receiving display, Mail Sending/Mail Receiving display, and Checking display.

### 1 Settings ▶ Display ▶ Display setting ▶ Select a type of display.

- When "Incoming call" or "Videophone incoming" is selected, select "Select calling disp."
- When "Mail receiving" is selected, select "Select receiving disp." and go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 115.
- If you select "Dialing", "Videophone dialing", "Mail sending", "Check new message", or "Mail/msg. rcpt result", go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 115.
- Select "Incoming call", "Videophone incoming" or "Mail receiving" and press  to check the contents actually displayed or played back.

### 2 Select a type of image.

Go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 115.

### Information

- When you select "Incoming call", "Videophone incoming", or "Mail receiving", select "Select ring tone" to set the ring tone. Go to step 2 on page 108.
- The priority order of displays for call receiving is as follows: "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Disp. PH-book image" → "Display setting". However, when "Incoming call" or "Videophone incoming" of "Read aloud settings" is set to "ON", the default image is displayed.  
The same order applies if a call comes in to Number B while using 2in1. However, when you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for a ring tone (Chaku-motion) by "Ringtone set. for No. B", it is played back as Chaku-motion, taking priority over this function.
- When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for a ring tone (Chaku-motion), it is played back for incoming calls, taking priority over this function. However, if you set a voice-only i-motion movie, the image set by this function is displayed.
- When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for "Select calling disp.", the i-motion movie is played back taking priority over "Select ring tone" of "Incoming call" for incoming calls. However, if you set an i-motion movie containing only video for "Select calling disp.", the ring tone selected for "Select ring tone" of "Incoming call" is played back.

### Information

- The images or ring tone set at purchase might be displayed or played back for incoming calls or messages, depending on the combination of this function and "Select ring tone".
- You cannot set some images for "Display setting".
- The sound of Flash movies is not played back.

## Set Battery Icon and Antenna Icon

You can set the icons for battery level and radio wave reception level that appear on the display.

1  Settings > Display > Display setting  
▶ Battery icon or Antenna icon ▶ Select a pattern.

- You cannot change icons such as "電池" or "self".

## Show Icons in Color/Monochrome


1  Settings > Display > Display setting > Icon color  
▶ Color or Monochrome

- You cannot change the battery icon and antenna icon.

## <Display Phonebook Image>

# Displaying an Image Stored in Phonebook during Ringing

If the caller ID notified by the caller matches the phone number stored in the Phonebook, the still image stored in the Phonebook is displayed.

1  Settings > Incoming call > Disp. PH-book image  
▶ ON or OFF

### Information

- The priority order of displays for call receiving is as follows: "Picture for Phonebook entry" → "Picture for group" → "Image for Phonebook entry" → "Display setting". However, when "Incoming call" or "Videophone incoming" of "Read aloud settings" is set to "ON", the default image is displayed.

## <Private Window>

MENU 9 3

# Setting Displays for Private Window

1  Settings > Display > Private window > ON or OFF  
▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Clock	You can set the display pattern of the clock. ▶ Pattern 1, Pattern 2, Pattern 3 or Pattern 4
Orientation	You can set the direction of the clock to be displayed. ▶ Pattern 1 or Pattern 2
Brightness	You can adjust the brightness to Level 1 (dark) through Level 3 (bright). ▶ Select a brightness level.
Called	You can display the phone number (name when stored in the Phonebook) of the caller during ringing. ▶ ON or OFF  You can set whether to display a Chaku-moji message. ▶ ON or OFF
Mail	You can display the received date/time and others of the mail message or Message R/F. (See page 32) ▶ ON or OFF  • The received date/time and others of the mail messages or Messages R/F in the box or folder with security set are not displayed.
i-Channel ticker	▶ ON or OFF  • You can set for each mode of 2in1. When 2in1 is deactivated, it becomes common to the setting in A Mode.
Disp. connection	You can set whether to display animations/characters during communication. ▶ ON or OFF

&lt;Received Mail/Call at Open&gt;

## Displaying Arrival Information by Opening FOMA Phone

When you have a missed call, new mail message, new chat mail message, or new Message R/F, the detailed Missed Call display/Inbox list/Chat Mail display/Message R/F list is displayed at opening the FOMA phone.

1  Settings ▶ Display ▶ Recv. mail/call at open  
▶ ON or OFF

### Information


- When a call comes in while you are using Simple Menu, the detailed Received Call display appears.
- When newly received messages and missed calls are found, the detailed Missed Call display appears.
- When a new mail message, chat mail, Message R/F are simultaneously received, the messages are displayed in the order of the chat mail message, i-mode message, Message R, and Message F.

&lt;Backlight&gt;

## Setting Lights for Display and Keypad

1  Settings ▶ Display ▶ Backlight  
▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Lighting	<p>You can set whether to light the backlight in ordinary time.</p> <p>▶ ON or OFF</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you set to "OFF",  appears on the Stand-by display.</li> </ul> <p>Also, you can set whether to activate Power Saver Mode for the display.</p> <p>▶ ON or OFF ▶ Enter a light time (seconds).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter from "015" through "999" in three digits.</li> </ul>

Item	Operation/Explanation
Charging	<p>▶ Standard or Constant light</p> <p><b>Standard</b> . . . . . Lights during charging in the same setting as it lights in ordinary time.</p> <p><b>Constant light</b> . . . . Always lights during battery charge.</p>
Area	<p>You can set the range the backlight lights in.</p> <p>▶ LCD+Keys or LCD</p>
Brightness	<p>You can adjust the brightness of the backlight for the display to Level 1 (dark) through Level 5 (bright).</p> <p>▶ Select a brightness level.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When "Auto setting" is set, the backlight set by "Area" is automatically adjusted according to the ambient brightness that has been detected by the light sensor.</li> </ul>
Soft light	<p>You can set whether to light the backlight softly for the display.</p> <p>▶ ON or OFF</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Even if you set to "OFF", the backlight might light softly for some functions.</li> </ul>

### To switch the backlight on/off by pressing one key

Press and hold  for at least one second.

### Information

- When "Lighting" is set to "ON", the backlight stays lit while a call is coming in and the area specified by "Area" lights for about 15 seconds when you turn on the power, touch the keys, or open the FOMA phone. The backlight stays lit while the camera is activated or a moving image/i-motion movie is played back. When "OFF" is set, it does not light. However, it stays lit during recording of a moving image regardless of the "Lighting" setting.
- See page 76 for Backlight during a videophone call.
- See page 310 for Backlight during watching a 1Seg program.
- If the power is supplied from external power sources such as an AC adapter (option), the setting for "Charging" applies, regardless of the on/off setting of the backlight for "Lighting".
- When you display the text of i-mode mail or Messages R/F, the lighting time varies according to the length of the text.
- If "Power saver mode" is set to "ON" and the specified time elapses without doing any operations on the Stand-by display or on the voice call talking display, the display switches to Power Saver Mode and goes off.



### Information

- When an image other than still image is set for the Stand-by display, the Stand-by display shifts to Power Saver Mode after the image is played back and a standby time elapses.
- The FOMA phone does not switch to Power Saver Mode during data communication or charging, or while the i-appli Stand-by display is running.
- The display appears when you operate the FOMA phone, receive a call, or receive i-Channel tickers. However, the receiving display does not appear when you receive a call in Public Mode (Drive Mode).

### <LCD AI>

## Adjusting Quality of Display Automatically

You can set whether to automatically adjust the brightness of the display backlight and to compensate the image quality according to that brightness during playback of i-motion movies, PC movies, Music&Video Channel programs, or video files, during a videophone call, or during watching a 1Seg program.

### 1 [MENU] ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ LCD AI ▶ ON or OFF

- If you operate the setting from the Function menu during a videophone call or watching a 1Seg program, the setting is effective only for the current videophone call or 1Seg program.

### Information

- If you set to "ON", the brightness is adjusted within the level specified for "Brightness" of "Backlight". The brightness is adjusted also while you are selecting a menu item.
- This function is disabled during Play Background.

### <View Blind>

## Making Display Hard to See from People Around

You can adjust the contrast of the display so that it is hardly viewed from a slanted angle.

### 1 [MENU] ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ View blind ▶ ON or OFF

▶ Select a contrast.

- You can adjust the contrast to Level 1 through Level 3. It is most difficult to view in Level 3.

### To switch View Blind on/off by pressing one key

Press and hold **[8]** for at least one second.

- While an i-appli program is running or PDF file is displayed, you cannot switch View Blind on/off by pressing and holding **[8]** for at least one second.

### <Image Quality>

## Setting Quality of Display

### 1 [MENU] ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Image quality ▶ Select an item.

**Normal** . . . . Normal image quality

**Vivid** . . . . . Vivid image quality

**Dynamic** . . . Dynamic image quality in which motion is emphasized

### <Color Theme Setting>

## Setting Color Combination for Display

You can set the display color pattern of characters, backgrounds, and so on.

### 1 [MENU] ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Color theme setting ▶ Select a color theme.

- While a color theme is selected, the selected color theme appears on the display for confirmation.

### Information

- You cannot change the color for icons and images displayed in multiple colors, the DoCoMo pictographs, and the Internet web pages (sites) supporting i-mode.

# Setting Display of Main Menu

You can change the icons and the background images of Main Menu.

1 **Menu icon setting** **Select a pattern.**



Metal



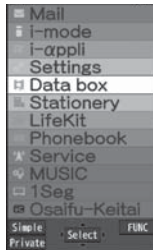
Black



White



Pink



Enlarge menu



Normal

2 When you select "Customize" in step 1, select a menu icon or background image to be changed

**Select a folder** **Select an image.**

Repeat step 2 and set menu icons and a background image.

- While selecting a menu icon or background image, press (Play) to confirm the currently set image.
- To reset the menu icon and background image set to "Customize" to "スタンダード (Standard)" in the "Pre-installed" folder, press (FUNC) and select "Reset" or "All reset", then select "YES".
- See page 186 when you select "Search by i-mode".



## Information

- The image you can customize is a JPEG or GIF image whose size is Stand-by (480 x 854) or smaller and up to 300 Kbytes. Perform "Change size" or "Trim away" for other images.
- When a customized image is deleted, "スタンダード (Standard)" in the "Pre-installed" folder returns.
- When Personal Data Lock is activated while "Customize" is set, the default image is displayed.
- When you set "Customize", the main menu icons do not switch even if you switch "Select language".

## Using Kisekæ Tool

You can use Kisekæ Tool to change the ring tone, Stand-by display, menu icons and others at a time.

● See page 184 for details on how to download Kisekæ Tool files.

### ■ Items that can be set with Kisekæ Tool

- Select ring tone
- Display setting
- Color theme setting
- Menu icon setting
- "Clock" and "Orientation" of Private window
- Illumination
- Illumination in talk
- Side key illumination
- Posit. tone/illum.
- Tone

- Items that can be set differ depending on the Kisekæ Tool file.
- The setting change of phone/videophone ring tones, mail ring tone, and Stand-by display is applied only to the A Mode of 2in1. The other changes are applied to the all modes of 2in1.

## 1 [MENU] ▶ Settings ▶ Kisekæ

▶ Highlight a Kisekæ Tool file and press [Set]

▶ YES

- "★" is added to the Kisekæ Tool file collectively set at the moment.
- Depending on the selected Kisekæ Tool file, the confirmation display might appear asking whether to change the character size. When you select "No", you might not be able to set the Kisekæ Tool file correctly.

### Information

- For the functions set by Kisekæ Tool, each setting display is shown with "Follow Kisekæ Tool" highlighted. You can separately change each setting, however, if you want to reset to the setting by Kisekæ Tool, you need to perform collective settings again. You cannot select "Follow Kisekæ Tool".

### Information

- If you use Kisekæ Tool to change the design of the Menu display, some menu configurations change according to the usage frequency depending on the type of the menu. Further, some menu numbers that are assigned to the menu items do not apply. In that case, you cannot operate as described in this manual, so you are advised to show Main Menu of "Normal" by "Disp. default MENU", or reset Main Menu by "Reset menu screen".
- When you set "P906" of Kisekæ Tool for Main Menu, the main menu items and sub-menu items are displayed in Japanese even if "Select language" is set to "English".

## Function Menu of Main Menu

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Menu icon setting	See page 120.
Change launcher	You can manually replace the items on Main Menu. ▶ Select a destination to save to ▶ YES
Disp. default MENU	You can temporarily show Main Menu of "Normal". ● Once you close Main Menu of "Normal", the currently set Main Menu returns.
Reset	See page 121.

## Reset Changed Design

You can reset the items changed by Kisekæ Tool.

1 [MENU] ▶ [i] [FUNC] ▶ Reset

▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Select an item.

- Reset disp./sound** . . . . . Resets all of "■ Items that can be set with Kisekæ Tool" to the default.
- Reset menu screen** . . . . . Resets Main Menu to the default. You can reset also by pressing and holding [CLR] for at least one second from the Stand-by display on the vertical display and selecting "YES".
- Reset menu log** . . . . . Resets the operation records of Main Menu to the default.

**Information**

- Even if you perform "Reset disp. /sound" or "Reset menu screen", you cannot reset "Character size".
- Even if you execute "Reset menu screen", the Main Menu items you have manually replaced by "Change launcher" are not reset.

## &lt;Horizontal Open Menu&gt;

**Setting Display of Horizontal Open Menu**

- 1 Settings > Display > Horizontal open menu  
▶ Pattern 1 or Pattern 2



Pattern 1



Pattern 2

## &lt;Feel \* Mail&gt;

**Using Feel \* Mail**

The **Feel \* Mail** reproduces the atmosphere of a mail message by actions of 45 types of animated characters. Once you activate **Feel \* Mail**, a **Feel \* Mail** image is played back after you receive an i-mode mail/SMS message.

- To end the playback, press or .
- When the FOMA phone is closed, press or to end the playback.



- 1 Settings > Feel \* Mail > Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Disp. /play new one</b>	A Feel * Mail image is played back after you receive an i-mode mail/SMS message. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> • When this function is set to "OFF", a Feel * Mail icon does not appear on the Received Address list/Detailed Received Address display, the Inbox list, and the detailed Received Mail display even while "Disp. /play in history" is set to "ON".
<b>Disp. /play in history</b>	A Feel * Mail icon appears on the Received Address list/Detailed Received Address display, the Inbox list, or the detailed Received Mail display. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>


## &lt;Illumination&gt;

**Setting Color of Call/Charging Indicator and Others**

- 1 Settings > Illumination > Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>All illum. setting</b>	You can set all illumination items at one time. ▶ <b>Select a pattern.</b>
<b>Illumination</b>	See page 123.
<b>Illumination in talk</b>	You can set the flickering color of the Call/Charging indicator for during a call. ▶ <b>Select a color.</b> • The Call/Charging indicator flickers for confirmation while you are selecting. • It flickers in the same color as it flickers during a call, while Record Message is working, during answer-hold (On Hold), or while a call is on hold (Holding).
<b>Miss/unread illum.</b>	The Call/Charging indicator flickers for missed calls, new mail messages, new chat mail messages, or new Messages R/F at about 5-second interval for about 3 hours. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Music&amp;Video illumination.</b>	The Call/Charging indicator flickers when obtaining Music&Video Channel programs is completed at about 5-second interval for about 30 minutes. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Illum. when folded</b>	The Call/Charging indicator lights when the FOMA phone is closed. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Hourly illumination</b>	You can be notified of the specified time (every hour at 0 minutes) by the tone and light of the Call/Charging indicator. ▶ <b>Select a pattern.</b> <b>OFF</b> . . . . . The Call/Charging indicator does not light. <b>Pattern 1</b> . . . . . A fixed tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights in the fixed color. <b>Pattern 2</b> . . . . . The tone and light of the Call/Charging indicator change by time. ● "Hourly illumination" does not work while a display other than the Stand-by display is shown, or Lock All or Omakase Lock is activated. ● Time tone sounds at the volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume". If "Step" is set, it sounds at Level 2.
<b>MUSIC illumination</b>	The Call/Charging indicator flickers for about 15 seconds when you start playback by MUSIC Player. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Bluetooth illumination</b>	The Call/Charging indicator flickers during connecting to Bluetooth devices. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> ● It flickers at about 5-second interval for about 5 minutes when the connection is completed.
<b>IC card illumination</b>	The Call/Charging indicator lights/flickers when you place the FOMA phone over an IC card scanning device or during iC communication. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> ● It does not light/flicker during IC Card Lock.
<b>PushTalk illumination</b>	The Call/Charging indicator lights/flickers when you try to get the PushTalk talker's right, or when a member's state changes to "Connected". ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>



Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Side key illumination</b>	You can set the lighting color of the Call/Charging indicator for when you press  with the FOMA phone closed. ▶ <b>Select a color.</b> ● The Call/Charging indicator lights for confirmation while you are selecting. ● The lighting duration differs depending on the illumination.
<b>Check settings</b>	You can check the setting contents for "Illumination", "Illumination in talk", "Hourly illumination" and "Side key illumination".

## Illumination



You can set the flickering color of the Call/Charging indicator according to the incoming type.

1  ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Illumination** ▶ **Illumination**  
▶ **Do the following operations.**

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Set color</b>	▶ <b>Select an incoming type</b> ▶ <b>Select a color.</b> ● To make the indicator light in colors "Color 1" to "Color 12" in order, select "Gradation". ● The Call/Charging indicator lights for confirmation while you are selecting.
<b>Set pattern</b>	You can set the flickering pattern of the Illumination. ▶ <b>Select a pattern.</b> <b>Standard</b> . . . . . Flickers in the same pattern repeatedly. <b>Melody linkage</b> . . . . . Flickers with the ring tone.
<b>Color setting (Edit color name)</b>	▶ <b>Edit color name</b> ▶ <b>Select a color</b> ▶ <b>Enter a name.</b> ● You can edit "Color 1" through "Color 12" only. ● You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.
<b>Color setting (Adjust color tone)</b>	▶ <b>Adjust color tone</b> ▶ <b>Select a color</b> ▶ <b>Adjust the color tone.</b> ● You can adjust the color tone of "Color 1" through "Color 12" only. ● Use  to select a color and use  to change the color tone.

**Information**

## &lt;Set color&gt;

- The priority order of illumination is; "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Set color".

## &lt;Set pattern&gt;

- The Call/Charging indicator flickers in peculiar pattern for each illuminations when "Set color" is set to other than "Color 1" through "Color 12" and "Gradation".
- The Call/Charging indicator flickers by "Standard" when an i-motion movie or melody with no flickering pattern is set for the ring tone.

## &lt;Info Notice Setting&gt;



## Checking Missed Calls and New Mail by Tone and Call/Charging Indicator

When the FOMA phone is closed, you can press to check for missed calls, new mail, new chat mail, new Messages R/F, record messages, and voice mail messages. To use this function, you need to set "Side keys guard" to "OFF" in advance.

### 1 Settings > Incoming call > Info notice setting > Select an item.

**ON**\* . . . Notifies you whether there are missed calls, new mail, new chat mail, or new Messages R/F by the electronic sound and flickering of the Call/Charging indicator.

**OFF** . . . Turns off the information notice.

※ When "Select language" is set to "日本語 (Japanese)", you can select "電子音 (electronic sound)" or "ボイス (voice)". With "ボイス (voice)", Japanese electronic voice and flickering of the Call/Charging indicator notify you of new chat mail, new mail, missed calls, record messages and voice mail messages in this order.

### If you press while the FOMA phone is closed

**When you have a missed call, new mail, new chat mail, or new Message R/F** (When the "Missed call" icon, "New mail" icon, "Chat mail", or "Message R/F" icon is displayed on the Stand-by display.)

If "Info notice setting" is set to "ON", a double-beep tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights for about five seconds.

If "Info notice setting" is set to "ボイス (voice)" in Japanese display, a beep tone sounds and a voice message announces that you have new mail, a missed call, and so on, and the Call/Charging indicator lights for about five seconds.

- When "Info notice setting" is set to "ボイス (voice)" in Japanese display, and a new Message R/F comes in, a voice message announces that you have new mail.
- If you press again while the voice is being played back, you can stop it.

**When you have no missed calls, new mail, new chat mail, or new Message R/F**

If "Info notice setting" is set to "ON", or "ボイス (voice)" in Japanese display, a triple-beep tone sounds, and the Call/Charging indicator flickers for about five seconds.

Even when "Info notice setting" is set to "ボイス (voice)" in Japanese display, the notice is not made by voice.

**Information**

- You cannot check for the mail messages held at the i-mode Center by this function.
- The confirmation function might not work depending on the function being activated.
- The sound volume for electronic sound cannot be changed.
- "ボイス (voice)" sounds at the volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume". If "Step" is set, the sound volume is Level 2.
- The missed call, new mail, and new chat mail are informed by both the Call/Charging indicator and the vibrator unless "Phone" of "Vibrator" has been set to "OFF".
- The vibrator notifies the information as follows:
  - Vibrates for about 1 second when you have a missed call, new mail, or new chat mail message.
  - Vibrates for about 0.2 second when you have no missed calls, new mail, or new chat mail message.
- If you open the FOMA phone during notification, it stops.

<Desktop Icon>

## Using Icons on Desktop















### ■ Operation when a status icon is selected

	<b>Vibrator</b> Shows the display for Vibrator. (See page 110)
	<b>Ring Volume</b> Shows the display for Ring Volume. (See page 68)
	<b>Manner mode</b> Shows the display Manner Mode Set. (See page 114)
	<b>Public Mode (Drive Mode)</b> Shows the display for releasing Public Mode (Drive Mode). (See page 69)
	<b>Notice call cost</b> Shows the display for Notice Call Cost. (See page 420)
	<b>Alarm</b> Shows the list of Alarm, Schedule, ToDo, Book Program, or Timer Recording. (See page 304, page 305, page 408, page 411 or page 415)
	<b>A Music&amp;Video Channel program is booked</b> Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 384)
	<b>Backlight</b> Shows the display for Backlight. (See page 118)
	<b>Side keys guard</b> Shows the display for Side Key Guard. (See page 141)
	<b>USB mode setting</b> Shows the display for USB Mode Setting. (See page 363)
	<b>Voice mail service</b> Shows the Voice Mail display Service. (See page 363)
	<b>Voice mail service of B mode</b> Shows the Voice Mail display Service. (See page 447)



	<b>Record message for voice calls</b> Shows the display for Rec. Msg/Voice Memo. (See page 71, page 73, page 110 and page 418)
	<b>Record message for videophone calls</b> Shows the display for Rec. Msg/Voice Memo. (See page 71, page 73, page 110 and page 418)


















### ■ Operation when a notification icon is selected

	<b>Missed call</b> Shows the Missed Call list. (See page 55)
	<b>Missed call to Number B of 2in1</b> Shows the Missed Call list. (See page 55)
	<b>Record message</b> Shows the Record Message list. (See page 73)
	<b>Videophone record message</b> Shows the Videophone Record Message list. (See page 73)
	<b>New i-mode mail or SMS</b> Shows the Inbox list. (See page 218)
	<b>New chat mail</b> Starts Chat Mail. (See page 242)
	<b>New Message R/F</b> Shows the Message R/F list. (See page 236)
	<b>When i-oppli did not start automatically</b> Shows the i-oppli Auto Start Info. (See page 262)
	<b>When a ToruCa file is obtained from a scanning device</b> Shows the ToruCa File list. (See page 269)
	<b>When a security error occurred on the i-oppli Stand-by display</b> Shows the Security Error History. (See page 253)
	<b>Success in downloading a Music&amp;Video Channel program</b> Activates Music&Video Channel. (See page 384)
	<b>Failure in downloading a Music&amp;Video Channel program</b> Activates Music&Video Channel. (See page 385)









	<b>Missed alarm</b> Shows the contents of the alarm that could not be notified. (See page 410)
	<b>Missed program</b> Shows the contents of the booked program that could not be notified. (See page 309)
	<b>When timer recording was completed</b> Shows the contents and results of the timer recording. (See page 309)
	<b>When Messages are held at the Voice Mail Center</b> Shows the Voice Mail display. (See page 446)
	<b>When the Phonebook could not be updated by Data Security Service</b> Shows the update display for Data Security Service. (See page 106)
	<b>When Provide Location was executed automatically</b> Shows Location History. (See page 286)
	<b>When Provide Location could not be executed automatically</b> Shows Location History. (See page 286)
	<b>When you did not respond to a location provision request</b> Shows Location History. (See page 286)
	<b>When Software Update is needed</b> Starts Software Update. (See page 531)
	<b>When Software Update was executed</b> Shows the Update Completion display or the reason for not completing. (See page 530)
	<b>When Software rewriting is possible</b> Shows the rewriting confirmation display. (See page 529)
	<b>When pattern data was updated automatically</b> Shows the updated result. (See page 535)
	<b>When the FOMA phone and a personal computer are connected by the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option)</b> Shows the display for USB Mode Setting. (See page 363)

■ Operation when a desktop icon is selected

	<b>Phone number</b> Shows the dialing display with the phone number entered. (See page 50 and page 82)
	<b>URL of site</b> Shows the site of that URL. (See page 172)

	<b>URL for Full Browser</b> Shows the site of that URL by Full Browser. (See page 314)
	<b>Sender's/Destination address of i-mode mail</b> Shows the Message Composition display with the mail address entered. (See page 198)
	<b>Sender's/Destination address of SMS</b> Shows the SMS Composition display with the mail address entered. (See page 244)
	<b>i-appli<sup>®</sup></b> Starts the i-appli program. (See page 251)
	<b>Picture<sup>®</sup></b> Shows it on the Picture viewer. (See page 330)
	<b>i-motion movie<sup>®</sup></b> Plays it back by the i-motion player. (See page 338)
	<b>Video file<sup>®</sup></b> Plays it back by the Video player. (See page 345)
	<b>Chara-den image<sup>®</sup></b> Plays it back by the Chara-den player. (See page 349)
	<b>Melody<sup>®</sup></b> Plays it back by the Melody player. (See page 351)
	<b>PDF file<sup>®</sup></b> Shows it on the PDF viewer. (See page 374)
	<b>ToruCa file<sup>®</sup></b> Shows it on the ToruCa viewer. (See page 269)
	<b>Private menu</b> Shows the Private menu. (See page 416)
	<b>Alarm</b> Shows the list of Alarm. (See page 408)
	<b>Schedule</b> Shows the Calendar display. (See page 412)
	<b>ToDo</b> Shows the ToDo list. (See page 415)
	<b>Text memo</b> Shows the list of Text Memo. (See page 421)
	<b>Calculator</b> Shows the calculator. (See page 421)



	<b>使いかたナビ (Guide)</b> Shows the display for 使いかたナビ (Guide). (See page 39)
	<b>Bar Code Reader</b> Shows the Bar Code Reader menu. (See page 165)
	<b>Receive Ir data</b> Shows the Ir Data Receiving display. (See page 370 and page 371)
	<b>Camera</b> Shows the Camera menu. (See page 155 and page 158)
	<b>Text Reader</b> Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 168)
	<b>Bluetooth function</b> Shows the Bluetooth Function Selection display. (See page 427, page 429, and page 432)
	<b>MUSIC Player</b> Starts MUSIC Player. (See page 392)
	<b>Music&amp;Video Channel</b> Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 384)

※ When the original data is deleted or overwritten, the desktop icon is disabled.

## Paste Icons to Desktop

You can paste up to 15 desktop icons of such as phone numbers, mail addresses, etc.

### 1 The display for an item to be pasted ▶ (FUNC)

▶ Add desktop icon ▶ YES


- When the addresses of the sender and another recipient of simultaneous mail are found or the multiple destination addresses are found, select a mail address or phone number to be pasted.

#### Information

- You may not be able to paste the URL to the desktop depending on the site.
- You can store the title for URL of up to 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters. When the number of characters for the title exceeds that much, the characters in excess are deleted. If no title exists for a site, up to 22 half-pitch characters of the URL excluding "http://" or "https://" is displayed.
- Some files and data might not be pasted to the desktop.

## Proceed to Respective Functions from Icons on Desktop

### 1 Press .

- You cannot select the icon even when you press  when the Stand-by display appears on the horizontal display.




### 2 Use to highlight an icon, and press (Select).

- Up to five "Desktop icons" are displayed. If there are six or more icons, "◀" and "▶" are displayed.
- A "Notification icon" is deleted when each function is executed. To delete all "Notification icons", press and hold (CLR) for at least one second from the display in step 1.



When a record message icon is selected

#### Information

- When the notification icon of "Messages are held at the Voice Mail Center" (  ) appears while you are overseas, you cannot operate the Voice Mail function from the notification icon. Follow the steps of "Operate Voice Mail Service from the Country You Stay" on page 480.

## Check Details of Desktop Icon

MENU 6 3

### 1 ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Desktop icon

The list of desktop icons pasted to the desktop is displayed.



Desktop Icon list

### 2 Select the icon whose details are to be displayed.

## Function Menu of the Desktop Icon List

- You can bring up the Function menu also by pressing (FUNC), while highlighting a desktop icon from the Stand-by display.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Add to desktop</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Put a check mark for the function to be added</li> <li> (Finish)</li> </ul>
<b>Edit title</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Enter a title.           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters. However, the number of characters for the title displayed when you highlight the icon is up to 11 full-pitch/ 22 half-pitch characters from the beginning of the title.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Sort</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Select a desktop icon ▶ Use  to change the order</li> <li> (Select)</li> <li>• To change the order in succession, repeat the above steps.</li> <li> (Finish)</li> </ul>
<b>Reset desktop</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The desktop icons are reset to the default.</li> <li>▶ YES</li> </ul>
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ YES
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ YES

&lt;Font&gt;

MENU 6 6

## Changing Character Font

1 ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Font ▶ Font 1 or Font 2

### Information

- Some characters are displayed in "Font 1" regardless of the setting of this function.
- You cannot change the font of a phone number entry or clock display.

## Change Character Font and Color of Phone Numbers

You can set the font and color of phone numbers or the name stored in Phonebook displayed on the following display:

### ■ Font of dial number

- Dialing/Call Receiving/Talking display
- Dialed Calls/Received Calls/Redial
- Detailed Sent Chaku-moji Message

### ■ Font color

- Dialing/Call Receiving/Talking display
- Dialed Calls/Received Calls/Redial
- Detailed Sent Chaku-moji Message
- Sent/Received Address list

- When you use 2in1, the setting here applies to Number A. To specify for Number B, operate "Set call/receive No. (Disp. call/receive No.)" of "2in1 setting".

1 ▶ Settings ▶ Incoming call ▶ Disp. call/receive No.  
▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Font of dial number</b>	▶ Select a pattern.
<b>Font color</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Select a color.           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can switch between 16 color and 256 color by pressing  (Change).</li> <li>You can reset the set color by pressing  (Reset).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>




### Information




- If you set the background color by Color Theme Setting or Kisekae Tool to the color same as the font color set by this function, the font color is changed automatically.
- You cannot change the color of photographs.

# Changing Character Size

## 1 Settings ▶ Display ▶ Character size

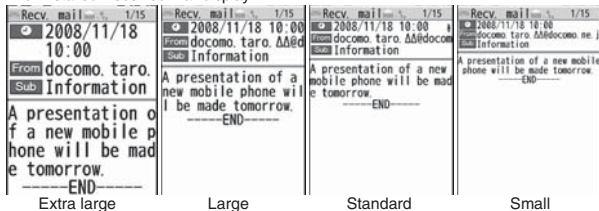
▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Set at one time</b>	<p>You can set all the items of "Character size" at a time.</p> <p>▶ <b>Large, Standard, or Small</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The confirmation display might appear asking whether to change the character size of the menu as well. If you select "YES", the menu icons are set to "Enlarge menu" when you have set to "Large", and they return to the default when you have set "Standard" or "Small".</li> <li>• When "Large" is set, "Mail", "i-mode", "Character input (Character size)" and "Character input (Candid. disp. size)" are set to "Extra large".</li> <li>• When "Small" is set, "Settings", "Data box", "Phonebook", "Dialed/recv. calls" and "Character input (Character size)" are set to "Standard".</li> <li>• If you select "YES" from the confirmation display asking whether to enlarge the font when switching to Simple Menu, "Large" is set.</li> </ul>
<b>Mail</b>	<p>You can set the character size for the detailed mail display, detailed Message R/F display and on the displays within "Mail settings".</p> <p>▶ <b>Extra large, Large, Standard, or Small</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• While a sent or received mail message is displayed, press , or press  to select "Display" and then select "Character size".</li> <li>• You cannot change the character size of the text of the Decome-Anime or Deco-mail pictograms.</li> <li>• While the detailed mail display is displayed, you can change character size also by pressing and holding  for at least one second.</li> </ul>

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>i-mode</b>	<p>You can set the character size of text on sites and on the displays within "i-mode settings" memos.</p> <p>▶ <b>Extra large, Large, Standard, or Small</b></p>
<b>i-Channel ticker</b>	<p>You can set the character size for the tickers of i-Channel.</p> <p>▶ <b>Large, Standard, or Small</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can check the ticker by pressing  (Play).</li> </ul>
<b>Setting menu</b>	<p>You can set the character size on the displays within "Settings" on Main Menu.</p> <p>▶ <b>Large or Standard</b></p>
<b>Data box</b>	<p>You can set the character size on the displays within "Data box" on Main Menu.</p> <p>▶ <b>Large or Standard</b></p>
<b>Phonebook</b>	<p>You can set the character size for the Phonebook display and on the displays within "Phonebook settings".</p> <p>▶ <b>Large or Standard</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can set also by  ▶ Phonebook ▶ Phonebook settings ▶ Character size ▶ Phonebook.</li> </ul>
<b>Dialed/recv. calls</b>	<p>You can set the character size for the Redial/Dialed Call/Received Call/Sent Address/Received Address list.</p> <p>▶ <b>Large or Standard</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can set also by  ▶ Phonebook ▶ Phonebook settings ▶ Character size ▶ Dialed/recv. calls.</li> </ul>
<b>Character input (Character size)</b>	<p>You can set the character size for the character entry display, Message Composition display, or SMS Composition display.</p> <p>▶ <b>Character size ▶ Extra large, Large or Standard</b></p>
<b>Character input (Candid. disp. size)</b>	<p>You can set the character size of the conversion candidate list that is shown below the Character Entry (Edit) display.</p> <p>▶ <b>Candid. disp. size ▶ Extra large, Large, Standard, or Small</b></p>

■ When the character size is set, the display appears as shown below:

<For Detailed Received Mail display>



**Information**

- Depending on the function, characters might not be displayed in set size.
- When "Extra large" or "Large" is set, some item names displayed for each operating procedure differ from the ones displayed for when "Standard" or "Small" is set.

**Setting Clock Display**

You can set whether to display the clock on the Stand-by display and can set its display pattern.

- 1 **Settings ▶ Display ▶ Display setting ▶ Clock**  
▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Clock display	▶ <b>Big, Small, or OFF</b> • You cannot change the clock size on the Private window, World Time Watch, and the sub clock.
Day of week	When "Select language" is set to "日本語 (Japanese)", you can select "日本語 (Japanese)" or "英語 (English)". • The setting here applies also to the clock display on the Private window. • If you set to "英語 (English)", also region names of World Time Watch are displayed in English.
Position	▶ <b>Select a pattern.</b> • You cannot change the clock position of the horizontal Stand-by display.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Color	▶ <b>Black or White</b>

**Information**

<Position>

- Even if you set any of "Pattern 3" through "Pattern 13", the clock is displayed in "Pattern 2" in the following cases:
  - When you set Calendar for the Stand-by display
  - When World Time Watch or the sub clock is displayed under the clock on the Stand-by display<sup>※</sup>
  - When a carrier name is displayed on the Stand-by display by "Operator name display"
  - When "time zone" of "Set time" is not set to "GMT +9".<sup>※</sup>
  - During Lock All
  - During Omakase Lock
- <sup>※</sup> Even if you set to "Pattern 1", the clock is displayed in "Pattern 2".
- If you set "Pattern 1", the settings of "Clock display" and "Day of week" are invalid.

# Security Settings

## Passwords

Passwords	132
Changing Terminal Security Code . . . <Change Security Code>	133
Setting PIN Code . . . . . <UIM Setting>	133
Releasing PIN Lock	134

## Restricting Operations or Functions

Locking your Phone to Prevent Use by Others . . . <Lock All>	134
Using Omakase Lock . . . . . <Omakase Lock>	135
Using Self Mode . . . . . <Self Mode>	135
Locking Functions Regarding Personal Information . . . . . <Personal Data Lock>	136
Setting a Variety of Locks . . . . . <Lock Setting>	137
Using Face Reader . . . . . <Face Reader Setting>	138
Locking Keypad Dial . . . . . <Keypad Dial Lock>	140
Preventing Side Key Operation . . . . . <Side Keys Guard>	141

## Restricting Outgoing/Incoming Calls or Messages

Setting not to Display Redial/Received Calls . . . . . <Record Display Set>	141
Protecting Phonebook Entries and Schedule Events from Prying Eyes . . . . . <Secret Mode> <Secret Data Only>	141
Applying Secret for Mail in Mail Box . . . . . <Secret Mail Display>	142
Setting not to Display Mail in Mail Box without Permission . . . . . <Mail Security>	142
Setting Restrictions on Phonebook Entries . . . <Restrictions>	142
Setting Response to Incoming Calls without Caller ID . . . . . <Call Setting without ID>	144
Delaying Start of Ringing Operation . . . . . <Ring Time>	144
Rejecting Incoming Calls from Phone Numbers which are not Stored in Phonebooks . . . . . <Reject Unknown>	145
What is Data Security Service? . . . . .	145
<b>Other “Security Settings”</b> Other “Security Settings” . . . . .	146

## Passwords


For some functions of the FOMA phone, you need to enter your password. In addition to the Terminal Security Code for operating respective mobile phone functions, the Network Security Code to use network services, and i-mode password are available. These passwords help you utilize your FOMA phone.

### ■ Cautions on passwords

- You should avoid using the numbers for passwords such as denoting your birth date, part of your phone number, local address number, room number, "1111" or "1234" that is easily decoded by a third party. Also make sure that you take a note of the passwords you have selected just in case you forget them.
- Take care not to let others know your passwords. Even if your passwords are known and used by a third party, we at DoCoMo take no responsibility in any event for the resultant loss.
- Note that we at DoCoMo will never make any inquiries about your passwords.
- If you do not remember your respective passwords, you need to bring an identification card such as your driver's license, the FOMA phone and UIM to the handling counter of a DoCoMo shop.  
For details contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back page of this manual.

## Terminal Security Code

The Terminal Security Code is set to "0000" at purchase but you can change it by yourself. (See page 133)

When the display for entering the Terminal Security Code appears, enter your four- to eight-digit code and press  (Set).

- When you enter your Terminal Security Code, the entered numbers are indicated by "\_" and not displayed.
- If you have entered wrong numbers or nothing for about 15 seconds, a warning tone sounds and a warning message is displayed; then the display prior to entering the Terminal Security Code returns. Check the correct code and retry entering numbers.



## Network Security Code

The Network Security Code is a four-digit number for procedures on DoCoMo e-site or for using network services. This is determined at the time of contract but can be changed by yourself.

If you have "DoCoMo ID/Password" for "My DoCoMo", the overall support site for personal computers, you can use a personal computer to take proceedings of changing your Network Security Code to new one. Also, you can change it by yourself from "各種手続き (procedures)" on DoCoMo e-site by using the i-mode phone.

※For "My DoCoMo" and "DoCoMo e-site (ドコモeサイト)", see the back of the back page of this manual.

## i-mode Password

You need to enter the four-digit "i-mode password" for registering or deleting My Menu, applying for or canceling Message Services, i-mode pay service, and so on. (Some information providers may provide you with their specific password.)

The i-mode password is "0000" at the time of your contract, but you can change it by yourself. (See page 177)

From i-mode, you can change the i-mode password by following operation:

"Menu" → "English iMenu" → "Options" → "Change i-mode Password"


## PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code

For the UIM, you can set the two security codes, namely the PIN1 code and PIN2 code. These security codes are "0000" at the time of your contract, but you can change them by yourself. (See page 134)

The PIN1 code is the four- to eight-digit number for checking the user each time the UIM is inserted into the FOMA phone or each time the FOMA phone is turned on, so that you can prevent the third party from using your UIM. By entering your PIN1 code, you can make or answer calls, or use functions in the FOMA phone.

The PIN2 code is the four- to eight-digit number for executing Reset Total Cost, using the user certificate or applying for the issue of it, etc.

- If you purchase a new FOMA phone and use the existing UIM with the new FOMA phone, use the PIN1 code and PIN2 code you have set previously.

When the PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code Entry display appears, enter your four- to eight-digit PIN1 code/PIN2 code and press .

- The entered PIN1 code/PIN2 code is displayed as "\*\*\*\*".
- If you enter a wrong PIN1 code/PIN2 code three times in succession, it is locked and the FOMA phone cannot be used. (The remaining number of times you can enter appears on the display.)  
When you enter the correct PIN1 code/PIN2 code, the remaining number of times you can enter will return to three times.
- You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 even from the PIN1/PIN2 Code Entry display.

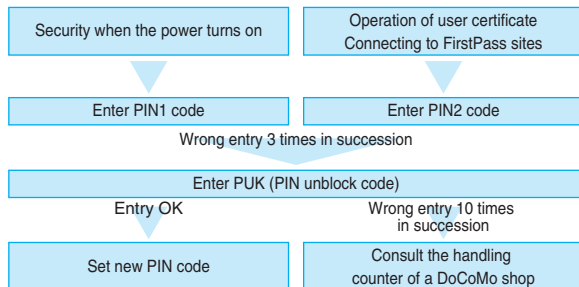


For PIN1 code

## PUK (PIN Unblock Code)

The PUK (PIN unblock code) is the eight-digit number for releasing the PIN1 code and PIN2 code lock state. You cannot change this code by yourself.

- If you enter a wrong PUK (PIN unblock code) 10 times in succession, the UIM is locked.



<Change Security Code>

MENU 2 9

## Changing Terminal Security Code

Change the default for the Terminal Security Code required for operating functions to your own four- to eight-digit code so that you can make full use of the FOMA phone. Make sure you take a note of the security code you have changed just in case you forget it.

- 1  Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Change security code  
▶ Enter the current Terminal Security Code.

- If you enter the code for the first time, enter "0000".


- 2 Enter a new Terminal Security Code (four to eight digits) ▶ YES

<UIM Setting>

## Setting PIN Code

### PIN1 Code Entry Set


You can set the FOMA phone not to work unless you enter your PIN1 code when turning on the power.

- 1  Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ UIM setting  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code  
▶ PIN1 code entry set ▶ ON or OFF  
▶ Enter the PIN1 code.

- See page 132 for the PIN1 code.

## Change PIN1 Code/Change PIN2 Code

You need to have set “PIN1 code entry set” to “ON” to change the PIN1 code.

- 1  Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ UIM setting  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code  
▶ Change PIN1 code or Change PIN2 code  
▶ Enter the current PIN1 code/PIN2 code.

- See page 132 for the PIN1 code/PIN2 code.

- 2 Enter a new PIN1 code/PIN2 code (four to eight digits).

- The entered PIN1 code/PIN2 code is displayed as “\_”.

- 3 Enter the new PIN1 code/PIN2 code again.

## Releasing PIN Lock

If you enter a wrong PIN1 code/PIN2 code three times in succession on the display requiring its entry, it is locked and the FOMA phone cannot be used. In this case, release the PIN1 code/PIN2 code lock and set a new PIN1 code/PIN2 code.

- 1 Enter the PUK (PIN unblock code) (eight digits).

- The entered unblock code is displayed as “\_”.
- You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 even from the PUK Entry display.



- 2 Enter a new PIN1 code/PIN2 code (four to eight digits).

- The entered PIN1 code/PIN2 code is displayed as “\_”.

- 3 Enter the new PIN1 code/PIN2 code again.

<Lock All>

## Locking your Phone to Prevent Use by Others




If you set Lock All, you can do no operations other than answering calls and turning on/off the power.

- 1  Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Lock all  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.

“” and “Lock all” appear and Lock All is set.

- To release Lock All, enter your Terminal Security Code from the Stand-by display. Even if you turn off the power, Lock All will not be released.

### Information

- You cannot make calls during Lock All. However, you can make emergency calls at 110/119/118. Select “YES” from the confirmation display for dialing.
- You can receive calls, but the callers’ data such as their names and images stored in the Phonebook are not displayed except for their phone numbers. Further, the ring tone sounds in “Pattern 1”.
- GPS Location Provision is available even during Lock All.
- If you fail to release Lock All five times in succession, the power to the FOMA phone turns off. However, you can turn it on again.
- You can receive mail messages or Messages R/F during Lock All; however, the Receiving or Reception Result display for incoming mail messages and Messages R/F does not appear. The icons such as “”, “”, or “” appear after Lock All is released.
- The notification icon, desktop icon, and schedule on the desktop disappears during Lock All. When Lock All is released, the icon reappears.
- The tickers of i-Channel are not displayed during Lock All.
- The default Wake-up display appears during Lock All even when an i-motion movie has been set for the Wake-up display.
- Even if you set Lock All, IC Card Lock is not activated.



## Using Omakase Lock

**When you have lost your FOMA phone or in other cases, you can use this service to remotely lock the FOMA phone in which your contracted UIM is inserted by contacting DoCoMo or by operating from My DoCoMo. To release the lock, contact DoCoMo by phone, etc.**

※ Omakase Lock is a pay service. However, you are not charged if you apply for this service at the same time as applying for the suspension of the use or during the suspension.

※ Even during Omakase Lock, your FOMA phone corresponds to the location provision request of GPS function if "Location request menu" is set to "ON".

### ■ Setting/Releasing Omakase Lock

☎ 0120-524-360 Business hours: 24 hours

※ You can set/release also from My DoCoMo site via a personal computer or other devices.

● For details on Omakase Lock, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

"Omakase lock" is displayed on the Stand-by display and Omakase Lock is set.

- During Omakase Lock, all the key operations are locked and respective functions (including IC card functions) are disabled, except for answering voice calls/videophone calls, putting them on answer-hold (On Hold), turning on/off the power, adjusting the earpiece volume and adjusting the ring volume.
- You can receive voice calls and videophone calls (except PushTalk calls), but the callers' data such as names and images stored in the Phonebook are not displayed except for their phone numbers. In addition, the ring image, ring tone, and vibrator are reset to the default.

When you release Omakase Lock, the former settings return.

- Mail messages received during Omakase Lock are held at the Mail Center.
- You can turn on/off the power, however, Omakase Lock is not released by turning off the power.
- GPS Location Provision is available even during Omakase Lock.
- Note that neither the UIM nor the microSD card is locked.

### Information

- Even while another function is working, Omakase Lock applies after finishing that function.



### Information

- Omakase Lock can be set even when another lock function is set. However, if you have set Public Mode (Drive Mode) before setting Omakase Lock, you cannot receive voice calls and videophone calls.
- Omakase Lock cannot be set when the FOMA phone is out of the service area, turned off, or during Self Mode.
- When you have signed up for Dual Network Service and are using the mova phone, Omakase Lock cannot be set.
- Even when the contractor and the user of the FOMA phone differ, the FOMA phone will be locked if the contractor offers to DoCoMo.

### <Self Mode>

## Using Self Mode

**You can disable all phone calls and communication functions. During Self Mode, the caller hears the guidance to the effect that radio waves do not reach or the power is turned off. If you use DoCoMo Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, you can use these services in the same way as when the FOMA phone is turned off.**

1  Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Self mode ▶ YES ▶ OK

"self" appears and Self Mode is set.

- To release Self Mode, perform the same operation.

### Information

- You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 even during Self Mode. In this case, Self Mode is released.
- You cannot receive mail messages, Area Mail messages, or Messages R/F during Self Mode.
- Even if a call comes in during Self Mode, the "Missed call" icon does not appear after releasing Self Mode.

&lt;Personal Data Lock&gt;

## Locking Functions Regarding Personal Information

To prevent other people from reading or tampering with your personal information, you can set the following functions not to be used:

- Record message
- Play/Erase msg.
- Select image
- Remote monitoring
- PushTalk phonebook
- Add to phonebook
- Group setting
- No. of phonebook
- Phonebook settings
- Search phonebook
- Voice dial
- Voice announcement
- Kisekkae tool
- Feel \* Mail image playback
- Desktop
- Restrictions
- Reject unknown
- Camera
- Bar code reader
- Text reader
- i-mode
- Bookmark
- i-Channel
- Mail
- Photo-sending
- Mail group
- Chat group
- i-oppli
- IC card content
- ToruKa
- GPS function
- 1Seg
- Full browser
- PC movie
- Still image
- Moving image
- Video
- Chara-den
- Melody
- microSD card
- Infrared data exchange
- iC communication
- PDF viewer
- Document viewer
- Music&Video Channel
- MUSIC
- MUSIC player
- Alarm
- Schedule
- ToDo
- Alarm setting
- Own number
- Voice memo
- Movie memo
- Voice recorder
- Text memo
- UIM operation
- Reset settings
- Initialize
- "Number setting" and "Set as ring tone" for Multi number
- Data transfer

## 1 [MENU] ▶ Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Personal data lock

### ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.

" $\frac{P}{\text{On}}$ " appears and Personal Data Lock is set.

- To release Personal Data Lock, perform the same operation. When Timer Lock ON At Close is set, the display for releasing Personal Data Lock appears also by opening the FOMA phone.

When you set "PIM/IC security mode" to "Face reader", follow the operation of "Use Face Reader to Release Lock" on page 140.

When you set to "Double security", enter your Terminal Security Code after the operation on the page 140.

### To temporarily release Personal Data Lock

When you select a function which cannot be used during Personal Data Lock, the display for entering your Terminal Security Code appears depending on the function.

When you enter your Terminal Security Code, " $\frac{P}{\text{On}}$ " is cleared and you can temporarily use the function.

- When you show the Stand-by display while no menu function is activated, Personal Data Lock is set again.


### Information

- You can automatically receive Messages R/F, i-mode mail messages, chat mail messages, and SMS messages during Personal Data Lock; however, the Receiving or Reception Result display does not appear. Further, the receiving operation such as ringing/vibration does not work, so you are not notified of receiving. The icons such as " $\frac{P}{\text{On}}$ ", " $\frac{P}{\text{Off}}$ ", or " $\frac{P}{\text{On}}$ " appear after Personal Data Lock is released.
- During Personal Data Lock, the "Notification icon" and "Desktop icon" such as "New mail", "Missed alarm", "Phone number", "URL" and "Mail address" do not appear, however, they reappear when you release Personal Data Lock.
- During Personal Data Lock, you cannot check a missed call or new mail by pressing  $\frac{P}{\text{On}}$  with the FOMA phone closed.
- During Personal Data Lock, the "Pre-installed" substitute image is sent to the other party if you send the substitute image during a videophone call.
- If you set "Lock all" during Personal Data Lock, " $\frac{P}{\text{On}}$ " is cleared and " $\frac{P}{\text{Off}}$ " appears instead.

## Setting a Variety of Locks

### Timer Lock ON At Close

You can set "Timer Lock ON At Close" that automatically activates Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock when the specified time has elapsed after closing your FOMA phone.

- 1  Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Lock setting
  - ▶ Timer lock ON at close
  - ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
  - ▶ Personal data lock or IC card lock
  - ▶ Select an elapse time.

If you set to other than "OFF", "☑<sub>On</sub>" appears and then Timer Lock ON At Close is set. After each lock is activated, the Lock Release display appears when you open the FOMA phone.

#### Information

- When the Stand-by display is not shown, or when another function is working with the Stand-by display shown, the lock is not activated even after the specified time elapses. However, when another function ends after closing the FOMA phone, the lock is activated after the specified time elapses.
- When a call or mail message comes in after closing the FOMA phone, or when you open it, the elapsed time counter returns to 0 seconds.
- When this function is activated, the lock is temporarily released if you release each lock. However, it is re-locked when the specified time elapses after closing the FOMA phone.

### PIM/IC Security Mode

You can set the way to release Personal Data Lock and IC Card Lock.

- 1  Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Lock setting
  - ▶ PIM/IC security mode
  - ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
  - ▶ Select a security mode.

**Security code** . . . . . Enter your Terminal Security Code to release the lock. The setting is completed.

**Face reader** . . . . . Use Face Reader authentication to release the lock.

**Double security** . . . . . Enter your Terminal Security Code to release the lock after using Face Reader authentication. The setting is completed.

## 2 YES

#### Information

- You cannot change PIM/IC Security Mode when the face data files stored by Face Reader Setting are fewer than three, or during Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock.

## Using Face Reader


You can store your face data files in Face Reader and use it for authentication when releasing IC Card Lock or Personal Data Lock. To use Face Reader, you need to store three or more face data files and set "PIM/IC security mode" to either "Face reader" or "Double security".

### ■ Notes on using Face Reader

- The dirty camera might result in erroneous operation. Use this function after wiping it with a soft cloth to clean the dirt off.
- In environment where the face is exposed to strong light and the brightness significantly differs depending on the region of the face, the face will not be recognized easily. In this case, storing might become difficult or the recognition rate (the rate of correct identification) might be lowered. Adjust so that the face is exposed to even light.
- The face might not be recognized normally when its entire part is exposed to the light and becomes white.
- Storing the face might become difficult or the recognition rate might be lowered when the face conditions are as described below:
  - When the features of the face (eyes, mouth, nose, and eyebrows, etc.) are hard to see as they are covered by hair, glasses, or a mask
  - When the brightness significantly differs depending on the region of the face such as when you are under the light in a dark place
- The recognition rate might rise by reacting in accordance with the face conditions such as by raising the hair so that the eyes, nose, mouth, and eyebrows are clearly visible (taking the glasses and mask off) or moving to a place where the face is exposed to even light. The recognition rate rises also by storing the face data file additionally.
- The face authentication technology does not completely guarantee that you are recognized as yourself. Accordingly, we are not at all responsible for damages resulting from the use of this product by a third party or when the damages are caused by what you could not use the function because of wrong authentication by Face Reader.

## Store

To use Face Reader, store 3 or more face data files. You can store up to 10 face data files.

- 1  Settings
  - ▶ Lock/Security
  - ▶ Lock setting
  - ▶ Face reader setting
  - ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Store
  - ▶ OK

Face to the front, and locate the face within the guide frame. You can prevent the failure in authenticating the face data file, which results from the difference in the position of the face at storing and authenticating the data.

When your face is recognized, the recognition frame for the eyes and mouth is displayed and the guide frame becomes green. When the recognition frame is not displayed or it comes off your eyes and mouth, place your face off the frame; then change the facing direction of your face to correctly display the recognition frame.


- The number of face data files is displayed by the bar on the Face Data Reading display.

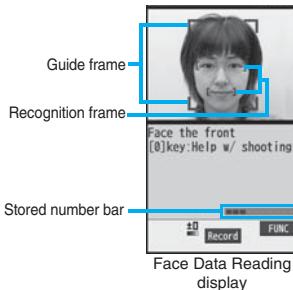
- 2 Press  (Record).

The face data file is shot.

- 3 Press  (Store).

The face data file you have shot is stored. Repeat step 1 through step 3 to store three or more face data files.

- When the third face data file is stored, the message appears telling that Face Reader can be more easily used by adding face data file.
- When you press , the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the face data file.
- If you try to store the face data file in the same environment, you might not be able to store it. Change the direction of the face or the place for shooting.



### Information

- At shooting, the Call/Charging indicator flickers in red and the shutter tone sounds regardless of the Manner Mode setting. The sound volume for shutter tone cannot be changed. Furthermore, the shutter tone does not sound during playback of a music file by MUSIC Player, or playback of a program by Music&Video Channel, or in pause state.

## Function Menu of the Face Data Reading Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Brightness</b>	You can adjust to -3 (dark) through +3 (bright). ▶ <b>Select a brightness level.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You can adjust brightness also by pressing (3) from the Face Data Reading display.</li></ul>
At Face reader start-up ±0	
<b>Help</b>	You can check the cautions for shooting. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You can bring up Help also by pressing (O) from the Face Data Reading display.</li></ul>

## Delete Stored Images

You can reset all the face data files stored in Face Reader.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Lock setting
  - ▶ Face reader setting
  - ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
  - ▶ Delete stored images ▶ YES

### Information

- You cannot reset the face data files during Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock.
- When you reset the face data files, "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Security code".

## Recognition-failed Image

The images not judged as yourself by Face Reader recognition operation are saved. You can use these images to specify who tried to illegally access your data.

The image is overwritten every time recognition-failed image is made.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Lock setting
  - ▶ Face reader setting
  - ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
  - ▶ Recog. failed image ▶ Select an image.

- To delete the recognition-failed images, press (F), select "Delete this", and then select "YES".

## Face Reader Security

You can set Face Reader to additionally recognize blinking of the eyes.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Lock setting
  - ▶ Face reader setting
  - ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
  - ▶ Face reader security ▶ Normal or High

Normal . . . Does not recognize blinking of the eyes.

High . . . . Recognizes blinking of the eyes.

## Change Security Code

You can set a password to be entered instead of the Face Reader authentication for when "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Face reader" or "Double security".

- 1 (MENU) ▶ Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Lock setting
  - ▶ Face reader setting
  - ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
  - ▶ Change security code
  - ▶ Enter the current Face Reader Security Code.

- If you enter the code for the first time, enter "0000".

## 2 Enter a new Face Reader Security Code (four to eight digits) ▶ YES

### Use Face Reader to Release Lock

When “PIM/IC security mode” is set to “Face reader”, use Face Reader to release the lock instead of using your Terminal Security Code.

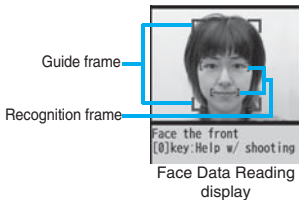
When it is set to “Double security”, use Face Reader for authentication and then enter your Terminal Security Code to release the lock.

## 1 Display for releasing Personal Data Lock/IC Card Lock ▶ Match the face to the guide frame and press



Face to the front, and locate the face within the guide frame. The recognition frame for the eyes and mouth is displayed, and the guide frame becomes green. When the recognition frame is not displayed or it comes off, place your face off the frame; then change the facing direction of your face to correctly display the recognition frame.

- Perform the operation for authentication with the same facial expression as when you stored the face data file.
- Press (Security Code) and enter your Face Reader Security Code; then you can operate to authenticate instead of using Face Reader. For the Face Reader Security Code, see page 139.



### If you failed to be authenticated

When additional storing of the face data file is possible, select “OK” to bring up the confirmation display asking whether to store additional face data file. Select “YES”, enter your Terminal Security Code; then you can store additional face data file. When you cannot store any more face data files, select “OK” to show the Face Data Reading display. If the shot face is judged as another person, a shutter tone sounds and the recognition-failed image is saved. Select “OK” to show the Face Data Reading display. Try authentication using Face Reader again.

- When 10 face data files are stored and a new data file is added, the oldest data file is overwritten.

### When “Face reader security” is set to “High”

After you are successfully authenticated by Face Reader, your eye blinking is checked. Repeat blinking your eyes slowly. When the detection of eye blinking fails, the authentication also fails.

- Even in the same environment as that for the authentication by Face Reader, the detection of eye blinking may fail. Change the place or the direction of your face, and then operate.

### <Keypad Dial Lock>

## Locking Keypad Dial

You can lock dialing from the numeric keys. When using the FOMA phone for business purposes, private use of the FOMA phone can be prevented.

### Unavailable operations

- Dialing from the numeric keys
- Initial setting
- Phonebook (storing, editing, deleting, copying from the microSD card, sending/receiving using Infrared rays, sending/receiving using iC communication, and sending/receiving using Bluetooth communication)
- Phone To/AV Phone To function
- Mail To function

### Available operations

- Dialing from the Phonebook or Voice Dial
- Dialing from Redial, Dialed Calls, Received Calls, Sent Address, or Received Address (Only phone numbers stored in the Phonebook)

## 1 ▶ Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Keypad dial lock ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.

“” is displayed and Keypad Dial Lock is set.

- To release Keypad Dial Lock, perform the same operation.

### Information

- You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 using numeric keys even during Keypad Dial Lock.

### Information

- If you set Keypad Dial Lock, you can send mail only when the address is called up from the Phonebook and when the address stored in the Phonebook is called up from Sent Address or Received Address.

### <Side Keys Guard>

## Preventing Side Key Operation

You can disable the side keys , , and  for when the FOMA phone is closed.



You can prevent operation errors in a bag.

### 1 (for at least one second)

" ON" appears and "Side keys guard" is set to "ON".

- To set to "OFF", perform the same operation.

### Information

- Even when "Side keys guard" is set to "ON", you can answer an incoming PushTalk call by pressing . You can get the talker's right by pressing  during the PushTalk communication.
- When an external device such as the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, the function of the side keys is valid regardless of this setting.

### <Record Display Set>

## Setting not to Display Redial/Received Calls

### 1 **Settings** **Incoming call** **Record display set** **Enter your Terminal Security Code** **Select an item.**

**Received calls** . . . . . Sets whether to display Received Calls and Received Address.

**Redial/Dialed calls** . . . . . Sets whether to display Redial, Dialed Calls and Sent Address.

### 2 ON or OFF

- When you set "Received calls" to "OFF", you cannot play back record messages of voice calls, either.

### <Secret Mode> <Secret Data Only>

## Protecting Phonebook Entries and Schedule Events from Prying Eyes

In ordinary mode, you cannot access/refer to Phonebook entries or schedule events stored as secret data. In Secret Mode, you can select whether to store the stored/edited Phonebook entries/schedule events as secret data or as ordinary data. The Phonebook entries/schedule events you have stored/edited in Secret Data Only are stored as secret data. You can access/refer to all the data files in Secret Mode but can access/refer to only the secret data files in Secret Data Only.

### Activate Secret Mode



### Activate Secret Data Only






### 1 **Settings** **Lock/Security**

#### **Secret mode or Secret data only**

#### **Enter your Terminal Security Code.**

When "Secret mode" is selected, " S" appears and Secret Mode is activated. When "Secret data only" is selected, " S" blinks, the number of stored secret data items is displayed, and then Secret Data Only is activated.

- If you call up a Phonebook entry or schedule event in Secret Mode, " S" stays lit for ordinary data and " S" blinks for secret data.
- To deactivate Secret Mode or Secret Data Only, perform the same operation or press  from the Stand-by display.

### To change secret data to an ordinary Phonebook entry or schedule event

In Secret Mode or Secret Data Only, select "Release secret" from the Function menu of the Phonebook entry or schedule event to be released.

### Information

- Only the Phonebook entries in the FOMA phone can be stored as secret data.

**Information**

- When you make a call to the party stored as secret data, his/her name is not displayed but the phone number is displayed on the Dialing/Talking display.
- If you call up a secret entry to make a call or send mail, the record is not stored in "Redial", "Dialed calls" or "Sent address".
- If you simultaneously activate "Lock all" and "Secret mode" or "Secret data only", deactivating "Lock all" deactivates "Secret mode" or "Secret data only".

## &lt;Secret Mail Display&gt;

**Applying Secret for Mail in Mail Box**

You can set whether to display the mail (secret mail) message from the sender or to the destination address that matches secret data in the Phonebook.

- 1  **Mail settings** ▶ **Secret mail display**  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ ON or OFF

**Information**

- Even when "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF", you can check secret mail in Secret Mode or in Secret Data Only.
- When "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF", and any secret address is included in addresses of simultaneous mail, that mail message is not displayed.
- When "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF", and any secret member is included in chat members, chat mail messages of all chat members are not displayed.
- When "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF", Area Mail messages are not displayed in Secret Data Only.

## &lt;Mail Security&gt;

**Setting not to Display Mail in Mail Box without Permission**

You can set the security function for the Inbox, Outbox and Draft of the Mail menu.

You need to enter your Terminal Security Code to display the mail messages in security-activated boxes.





- 1  **Mail settings** ▶ **Mail security**  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code  
▶ Put a check mark for boxes to be set  **Finish**
  - When security is set, "🔒" is added to the icon of the set box in the Mail menu.

**Information**

- If you set security for the Outbox and Inbox, mail addresses are not stored in Sent Address and Received Address.

## &lt;Restrictions&gt;

**Setting Restrictions on Phonebook Entries****Restrict Dialing**

You can disable making voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls to phone numbers other than specified ones. When you use the FOMA phone for business use, this function is useful for preventing the private use. Bring up the specified Phonebook entry and press  or  to make a voice call. (To make a videophone call, press , and to make a PushTalk call, press .) You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

**Call Rejection**

You can reject voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls from specified phone numbers. You can set only the calls you do not want to receive to be rejected. The caller hears a busy tone. You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID" simultaneously.



## Call Acceptance

You can receive voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls only from specified phone numbers. You can set only the calls you want to accept to be connected. You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" simultaneously.

## Restrict Dialing/Call Rejection/Call Acceptance

### 1 Detailed Phonebook display ( ) >> Restrictions ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Select an item.

**Restrict dialing** . . . . You can dial the specified phone numbers only.





**Call rejection** . . . . You can reject calls from the specified phone numbers.

**Call acceptance** . . . . You can accept calls from the specified phone numbers only.

**Call forwarding** . . . See page 451.

**Voice mail** . . . . . See page 448.

The set item is indicated by "★".

- When a Phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, press  on the detailed display to highlight the phone number you will set Restrictions for.
- To set Restrict Dialing for multiple phone numbers, first set Restrict Dialing and press  to return to the detailed Phonebook display;  to highlight the phone number to be set for Restrict Dialing and continue the operation. If you press  to return to the Stand-by display, additional settings cannot be done. To do additional settings, release Restrict Dialing for the set phone number and activate Restrict Dialing again, including the released phone number.
- To release Restrictions, perform the same operation.

### Information



- You cannot set this function for Phonebook entries stored as secret data, and in the UIM Phonebook.
- If you activate "Personal data lock" while "Call rejection" or "Call acceptance" is set, you can accept all incoming calls.

### Information

- You cannot operate the following while "Restrict dialing" is set:
  - Calling up/Referring to phone numbers other than specified
  - Keypad dial (except for the calls to the specified phone numbers)
  - Dialing from Received Calls (except for the calls from the specified phone numbers)
  - Storing/Editing/Deleting Phonebook entries, copying Phonebook entries from the microSD card, and copying Phonebook entries to the UIM
- You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 even if you set "Restrict dialing".
- When a call comes in from the phone number set with "Call rejection", or from other than the phone number set with "Call acceptance", the call is stored in "Received calls" as a missed call record and the "Missed call" icon appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to "Activate". However, if you set the ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, when the FOMA phone is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played back, activating Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- You can receive SMS messages or i-mode mail messages regardless of the setting of "Call rejection" or "Call acceptance".

## Check/Release Restrictions on Phonebook Entries

### 1 >> Phonebook >> Restrictions ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Select an item.

- The set item is indicated by "★".
- To release all the Phonebook entries set with Restrictions, press  (  ), select "Release", and then select "YES".

### 2 Select a Phonebook entry.

The phone number set with Restrictions is displayed.

- To release "Restrictions" per phone number, select the phone number you want to release by following the same steps above, and select "YES".

&lt;Call Setting without ID&gt;

MENU 1 0

## Setting Response to Incoming Calls without Caller ID

You can set whether to receive (accept) or not to receive (reject) a voice call, videophone call, and PushTalk call depending on the reason for no caller ID. There are three reasons; "Unavailable", "PublicPhone", and "User unset".

### 1 Settings > Lock/Security > Call setting w/o ID > Enter your Terminal Security Code > Select an item.

**Unavailable** . . . . Calls from the other party who cannot notify his/her phone number such as calls from overseas or from landline phones via call forwarding services.

(However, the caller ID might be notified depending on the telephone companies the calls go through.)

**PublicPhone** . . . . Calls from public phones, etc.

**User unset** . . . . . When the caller has set the caller ID not to be notified.

### 2 Accept or Reject

- If you select "Accept", go to step 2 on page 108 to select a ring tone. If you select "Same as ring tone", the ring tone will be the one selected in "Phone" of "Select ring tone".

#### Information

- If you select "Reject", the ring tone does not sound even if a call comes in, the call is stored in "Received calls" as a missed call record and the "Missed call" icon appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to "Activate". However, if you set the ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, when the FOMA phone is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played back, activating Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- You can receive SMS messages or i-mode mail messages regardless of this setting.

&lt;Ring Time&gt;

MENU 9 0

## Delaying Start of Ringing Operation

### 1 Settings > Incoming call > Ring time > Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Ring start time</b>	You can set the FOMA phone not to start ringing operation immediately for when a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk call comes in from the party whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook. This function is effective as a countermeasure for blocking nuisance calls such as one ring phone scam (one-girl). ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> ▶ <b>Enter a start time (seconds)</b> . • Enter from "01" through "99" in two digits.
<b>Missed calls display</b>	You can set whether to display the call disconnected within the time specified for "Ring start time" in Received Calls. ▶ <b>Display or Not display</b>

#### Information

- When a call comes in from the party whose phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the FOMA phone starts ringing as soon as the call comes in even if "186"/"184" is added to the phone number. However, during Personal Data Lock, or for the call from the party whose phone number is stored as secret data, ringing starts according to the setting of this function.
- If the ring start time is longer than the ring time for Record Message Setting, the ringing operations do not start, activating Record Message instead. To activate Record Message after starting the ringing operations, set the longer ring time for Record Message Setting than the ring start time. The same applies to the ring time for Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, and Auto Answer Setting.

<Reject Unknown>

## Rejecting Incoming Calls from Phone Numbers which are not Stored in Phonebooks

You can reject voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls from the party whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook. This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID" simultaneously.

1  Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Reject unknown  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Accept or Reject

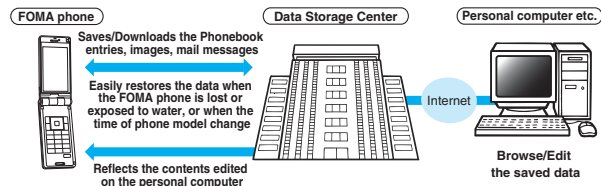
### Information

- If a call comes in from the party whose phone number is stored as secret data, the call is not rejected, regardless of this setting.
- If you simultaneously activate "Reject unknown" and "Call acceptance" of "Restrictions", the latter has priority.
- When a call comes in from anyone whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook while you set this function to "Reject", the call is stored in "Received calls" as a missed call record, and the "Missed call" icon appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to "Activate". However, if you set the ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, when the FOMA phone is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played back, activating Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- Even when this function is set to "Reject", your FOMA phone follows the settings specified by "Call setting w/o ID" if each setting of "Call setting w/o ID" is set to "Accept".
- You can receive SMS messages or i-mode mail regardless of this setting.
- You cannot set "Reject unknown" to "Reject" while "Ring start time" of "Ring time" is set to "ON".

## What is Data Security Service?

You can back up the Phonebook by auto-updating. Data Security Service enables you to save the Phonebook entries, images, and mail messages stored in your FOMA phone to the Data Storage Center and to restore the saved data files even when the FOMA phone is lost or exposed to water. Further, you can notify of your mail address change to multiple addresses at a time. You are not charged a packet communication fee for mail sending. If any personal computer (My DoCoMo) is available, you can use this service more conveniently.

- For details on Data Security Service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".



- Data Security Service is a pay service that is available on a subscription basis. (You need to subscribe to i-mode to apply for Data Security Service.)

## Other “Security Settings”

Other than introduced in this chapter, the following functions/services for the Security Settings are available:

If you want	Functions/Service name	Reference page
To protect the IC card function from being used illegally	IC Card Lock	275
To prevent crank calls or vicious sales calls from incoming	Nuisance Call Blocking Service	451
To prevent the incoming call that does not notify a caller ID	Caller ID Request	452
To ensure safe and reliable data communication by using electronic authentication services ※ Limited to FirstPass sites	FirstPass	190
To update software programs in the FOMA phone when necessary	Software Update	528
To protect the FOMA phone from data liable to cause trouble	Scanning Function	534
To receive necessary mail only from among the large volume of incoming mail	Receive Option	214

If you want	Functions/Service name	Reference page
To store/check safety information using i-mode when a disaster occurs	i-mode Disaster Message Board Service	※
To change the mail address	Change Mail Address	
To reject mail with URL	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mail with URL)	
To accept or reject mail from the specified domain	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)	
To accept or reject mail between i-mode mobile phones only		
To accept or reject mail from the specified address		
To set the recommended Spam Mail Prevention easily	Spam Mail Prevention (Easy Mail Setting)	
To reject the 500th and succeeding i-mode mail messages sent from a single i-mode phone on the same day	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders)	
To reject SMS messages	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	
To reject advertising mail that is sent unilaterally	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To restrict the file size of incoming mail	Limit Mail Size	
To confirm the settings for the mail function	Confirm Settings	
To stop the mail function temporarily	Suspend Mail	
To check whereabouts of lost mobile phone	Keitai-Osagashi Service	

※ Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”

### Information

- The priority order of functions simultaneously set to prevent nuisance calls is as follows: “Nuisance Call Blocking Service” → “Call rejection” → “Reject unknown/Call setting w/o ID” → “Ring time”.

Before Using Cameras .....	148
Shooting Still Images .....	<Still Image Shoot> 155
Shooting Moving Images .....	<Moving Image Shoot> 158
Changing Settings for Shooting Images .....	159
Setting Image Size and Image Quality .....	160
Using Bar Code Reader .....	<Bar Code Reader> 165
Using Text Reader .....	<Text Reader> 168

## ■ Copyrights and Portrait Rights

You have no right to copy, modify, or distribute the contents of which a third party holds the copyright such as text, image, music, or software programs downloaded from web pages on the Internet, or recorded using this product, without permission from the copyright holder except for when the copy or quote is for personal use that is allowed by the copyright law.

Note that it may be prohibited to shoot or record live performances or exhibitions even for personal use.

Make sure that you refrain from shooting portraits of other persons and distributing such portraits over the Internet without consent, as this may violate portrait rights.



- You may be imposed punishment according to the law and rule (such as the nuisance prevention ordinance) if you use the FOMA phone to give a remarkable nuisance and misdeed to the public.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when shooting and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

## Before Using Cameras

### Notes for when Shooting Images

- Check the lens for any stain before shooting. If the lens is stained, clean the lens with a soft cloth. If the lens is stained with fingerprints or something oily, you will not be able to focus on a subject, or the stains are reflected on still or moving images you shoot.
- Make sure that you do not let fingers, hairs, or the strap overlap the lens when shooting.
- Make sure that you hold the FOMA phone securely with your hands so that it does not move when shooting. Otherwise, the image may be blurred, especially in a dark place.
- Do not leave the FOMA phone with the lens pointing direct to the sunlight. Pixels may be discolored or burns may result.
- If you shoot under a fluorescent lamp, mercury lamp, or sodium lamp flickering at high speeds, "flicker symptom", horizontal stripes flow from top to bottom or left to right of the display, may result. The color tone for the image may vary depending on a shooting timing.
- If you shoot a subject containing an area of an extremely high brightness such as the reflection of sun light, the bright area might be black-spotted but this is not a malfunction.
- Images shot by the cameras might differ from actual subjects in color tone and brightness.
- When the battery level is low, you may not be able to save still or moving shot images.
- A slight time lag is found between when you press  (Record) and when you actually shoot. Therefore, if you shoot a fast moving subject, the subject might be shot with its position slightly away from the one you see it when you press .
- Do not remove the microSD card while saving files to it. The FOMA phone or microSD card could malfunction.
- If you turn off the power while saving a file, an incomplete file may be saved.

- If the battery pack is removed off while saving a file to the FOMA phone or microSD card, that data becomes contingent.
- You need to obtain a microSD card separately to use the functions related to the microSD card.  
The microSD card is available at mass retailers for home electric appliances, etc. (See page 355)

### Use Cameras

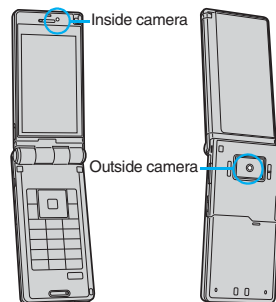
You can use the cameras to shoot still or moving images.

You can switch between the front (inside camera) and the back (outside camera).

The outside camera comes with the automatic focusing function to automatically focus on subjects. (See page 160)

The Image Stabilizer function enables you to shoot images with less blur. (See page 162)

You can easily operate the main functions for shooting not only from the Function menu but also by operating the keys.



## ■ Keys used for shooting

Icon menu operation		Brightness	
Function menu access		White balance	
Bar code reader		Photo mode	
Shutter/Save		Image quality	
Tele		Image size	
Wide		Image stabilizer	
Settings for Focus (when the outside camera is used)*1		Auto timer	
Autofocus (when the outside camera is used)		Settings for Store in**4	
Change camera-mode**2		Switch cameras**5	
Displays for Icons**3		End camera (in ordinary time)	
		Release focus lock (when focus is locked)	
		End camera	

\*1 Each time of pressing switches in order of "Face detection" (in Photo Mode)→ "Auto"→"Close-up"→"Landscape".

\*2 Each time of pressing switches in order of "Photo mode"→"Movie mode"→ "Continuous mode".

\*3 Each time of pressing switches between "ON" and "OFF".

\*4 Each time of pressing switches between "Phone" and "microSD".

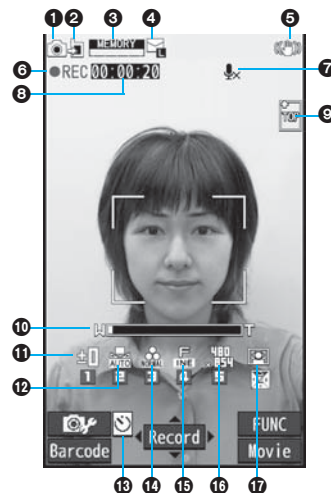
\*5 Each time of pressing switches between inside camera and outside camera.

## Information















- While the camera is activated, the Call/Charging indicator flickers. You cannot turn off flickering.
- You cannot change or silence the volume of the shutter sound. You cannot set a downloaded melody for the shutter sound, either.
- If no key operation is done on the Finder display, the camera is automatically deactivated after about three minutes.
- When you shoot in a dark place, ensure to set "Photo mode" of "Camera settings" to "Night mode".
- You can operate the following by the Icon menu: "Brightness", "White balance", "Photo mode", "Image quality", "Image size", "Focus".
















## Camera Setting and Finder Display

On the Finder display, the settings are indicated by bars and icons.




















Icon/bar name	Icon	Description	Page
① Camera mode		Photo mode	155
		Movie mode	158
		Continuous mode (Auto, Manual, Auto bracket)	155
② Store in		Phone: Stores in the FOMA phone.	162
		microSD: Stores on the microSD card.	

Icon/bar name	Icon	Description	Page
③ Number of recordable image Memory capacity bar	—	Number of remaining recordable still images Up to 999 images are displayed.	—
		Memory usage state (estimate) in Movie mode Displayed in red when the memory space reaches maximum.	—
④ File size setting		Mail restrict'n (S): Up to 500 Kbytes can be saved.	160
		Mail restrict'n (L): Up to 2 Mbytes can be saved.	
		Long time: Long time recording is possible.	
⑤ Image stabilizer		Auto	162
⑥ Shooting status	● REC	During moving image recording	158
⑦ Movie type set		Records only the video.	162
⑧ Recordable time	—	Recordable time (estimate) for moving images	—
⑨ Top icon		Shows the vertical direction of the still or moving image.	—
⑩ Zoom bar		Zooming status	159
⑪ Brightness		Brightness of shot image	161
⑫ White balance		Auto: For adjusting white balance automatically	161
		Fine: For shooting outdoors in fine weather	
		Cloudy: For shooting in cloudy weather or in the shade	
		Light bulb: For shooting under incandescent light	
		Fluorescent light: For shooting under fluorescent light	

Icon/bar name	Icon	Description	Page
⑬ Number of frames for continuous shooting Auto timer		Number of frames at "Manual" shooting in "Continuous mode"	162
		ON	164
⑭ Photo mode		Normal	161
		Portrait	
		Sports	
		Food	
		Scenery	
		Night mode	
		Backlight	
		Character	
		Snow	
		Sunset	
⑮ Image quality		Normal: Standard quality	161
		Fine: Fairly high quality	
		Super fine: High quality	



Icon/bar name	Icon	Description	Page	
⑩ Image size (Photo mode/ Continuous mode)		5M (2592 x 1944)	160	
		3.7M Wide (2592 x 1456)		
		3M (2048 x 1536)		
		2M Wide (1920 x 1080)		
		2M (1600 x 1200)		
		Stand-by (480 x 854)		
		Outside camera photo		VGA (640 x 480)
				CIF (352 x 288)
				QVGA (240 x 320)
				QCIF (176 x 144)
				Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)
		Inside camera photo		VGA (640 x 480)
				CIF (352 x 288)
				QVGA (240 x 320)
QCIF (176 x 144)				
Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)				
Image size (Movie mode)		VGA (640 x 480)		
		HVGA Wide (640 x 352)		
		QVGA (320 x 240)		
		QCIF (176 x 144)		
		Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)		
⑪ Focus		Face detection	161	
		Auto		
		Close-up		
		Landscape		

## Specifications for Still Image Shooting

File format	JPEG
Compression format	Baseline format
Pixels	Photo: 5M (2592 x 1944), 3.7M Wide (2592 x 1456), 3M (2048 x 1536), 2M Wide (1920 x 1080), 2M (1600 x 1200), Stand-by (480 x 854), VGA (640 x 480), CIF (352 x 288), QVGA (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) Continuous shooting: VGA (640 x 480), CIF (352 x 288), QVGA (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)
Extension	jpg
Title	Automatically set according to the date and time the image was saved and the number of shot frames (when the 1st frame was shot at 10:00 on November 18, 2008) "2008/11/18 10:00"
File name	Automatically set according to the date and time the image was saved and the number of shot frames (when the 1st frame was shot at 10:00 on November 18, 2008) "2008111810000000" (Store in: Phone) "P1000001" (Store in: microSD)
Maximum file size	1.8 Mbytes
Mail attachment/Output	Can be attached to mail or output from the FOMA phone by using the microSD card.
Memory capacity	Approx. 101.6 Mbytes (Phone)

## Estimate of the number of storable still images

The number of files that can be saved varies depending on shooting environments.

※The number of files that can be saved to the FOMA phone and microSD card has limit.

### ■ The number of files that can be saved to P906i

Image quality Image size	Super fine (Approx.)	Fine (Approx.)	Normal (Approx.)
5M (2592 x 1944)	54	74	97
3.7M Wide (2592 x 1456)	81	97	121
3M (2048 x 1536)	97	120	137
2M Wide (1920 x 1080)	139	191	237
2M (1600 x 1200)	139	191	237
Stand-by (480 x 854)	649	不正規	1,080
VGA (640 x 480)	950	1,131	1,320
CIF (352 x 288)	1,697	2,160	2,500
QVGA (240 x 320)	1,980	2,500	2,500
QCIF (176 x 144)	2,500	2,500	2,500
Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	2,500	2,500	2,500

● The number of files that can be saved the default estimate value.

### ■ The number of files that can be saved to the microSD card (64 Mbytes)

Image quality Image size	Super fine (Approx.)	Fine (Approx.)	Normal (Approx.)
5M (2592 x 1944)	34	47	62
3.7M Wide (2592 x 1456)	51	62	77
3M (2048 x 1536)	62	77	87
2M Wide (1920 x 1080)	89	122	152
2M (1600 x 1200)	89	122	152
Stand-by (480 x 854)	411	不正規	691
VGA (640 x 480)	608	724	845
CIF (352 x 288)	1,087	1,383	1,902
QVGA (240 x 320)	1,268	1,691	2,174
QCIF (176 x 144)	2,536	3,044	3,805
Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	3,805	5,073	5,073

● The number of files that can be saved is the estimate value.

## Specifications for Moving Image Shooting

File format	MP4, ASF
Coding system	Video: MPEG4 Voice: AMR, G.726
Pixels	VGA (640 x 480), HVGA Wide (640 x 352), QVGA (320 x 240), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)
Extension	3gp, mp4, asf
Title	Automatically set according to the date and time the image was recorded (when shot at 10:00 on November 18, 2008) "2008/11/18 10:00"
File name	Automatically set according to the date and time the image was recorded (when shot at 10:00 on November 18, 2008) "200811181000" (Store in: Phone) "MOL001" (Store in: microSD)
Maximum file size	2 Mbytes (Store in: Phone) Can be limited to the size which can be attached to i-motion mail when shooting. (See page 160)
Mail attachment/Output	Can be attached to mail or output from the FOMA phone by using the microSD card.
Memory capacity	Approx. 101.6 Mbytes (Phone)

## Estimate of recordable time

The recordable time varies depending on shooting environments. Take reference to the recordable time and memory capacity which appear on the Finder display as well.

### Recordable time to P906i

Image size	File size setting	Movie type set	Recordable time per recording (Approx.)			Total recordable time (Approx.)		
			Image quality			Image quality		
			Super fine	Fine	Normal	Super fine	Fine	Normal
VGA (640 x 480)	Mail restriction (S)	Normal	2 sec	4 sec	8 sec	349 sec	11 min	22 min
		Video	2 sec	4 sec	8 sec	351 sec	11 min	22 min
		Voice	305 sec			957 min		
	Mail restriction (L)	Normal	8 sec	16 sec	30 sec	349 sec	11 min	22 min
		Video	8 sec	16 sec	30 sec	351 sec	11 min	22 min
		Voice	20 min			957 min		
HVGA Wide (640 x 352)	Mail restriction (S)	Normal	3 sec	5 sec	10 sec	464 sec	15 min	29 min
		Video	3 sec	5 sec	10 sec	468 sec	15 min	30 min
		Voice	305 sec			957 min		
	Mail restriction (L)	Normal	11 sec	20 sec	40 sec	464 sec	15 min	29 min
		Video	11 sec	20 sec	40 sec	468 sec	15 min	30 min
		Voice	20 min			957 min		
QVGA (320 x 240)	Mail restriction (S)	Normal	4 sec	5 sec	15 sec	11 min	15 min	44 min
		Video	4 sec	5 sec	15 sec	11 min	15 min	45 min
		Voice	305 sec			957 min		
	Mail restriction (L)	Normal	16 sec	20 sec	59 sec	11 min	15 min	44 min
		Video	16 sec	20 sec	60 sec	11 min	15 min	45 min
		Voice	20 min			957 min		
QCIF (176 x 144)	Mail restriction (S)	Normal	10 sec	35 sec	69 sec	29 min	108 min	213 min
		Video	10 sec	39 sec	78 sec	30 min	121 min	243 min
		Voice	305 sec			957 min		
	Mail restriction (L)	Normal	39 sec	141 sec	279 sec	29 min	108 min	213 min
		Video	40 sec	159 sec	318 sec	30 min	121 min	243 min
		Voice	20 min			957 min		
Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	Mail restriction (S)	Normal	19 sec	62 sec	122 sec	57 min	194 min	380 min
		Video	20 sec	78 sec	156 sec	60 min	243 min	487 min
		Voice	305 sec			957 min		
	Mail restriction (L)	Normal	75 sec	254 sec	497 sec	57 min	194 min	380 min
		Video	80 sec	318 sec	10 min	60 min	243 min	487 min
		Voice	20 min			957 min		

● The recordable time is the default estimate value.

■ Recordable time to microSD card (64 Mbytes)

Image size	File size setting	Movie type set	Recordable time per recording (Approx.)			Total recordable time (Approx.)		
			Image quality			Image quality		
			Super fine	Fine	Normal	Super fine	Fine	Normal
VGA (640 x 480)	Long time	Normal	227 sec	447 sec	14 min	227 sec	447 sec	14 min
		Video	231 sec	462 sec	15 min	231 sec	462 sec	15 min
		Voice	180 min			240 min		
HVGA Wide (640 x 352)		Normal	301 sec	577 sec	18 min	301 sec	577 sec	18 min
		Video	308 sec	10 min	20 min	308 sec	10 min	20 min
		Voice	180 min			240 min		
QVGA (320 x 240)		Normal	447 sec	577 sec	26 min	447 sec	577 sec	26 min
		Video	462 sec	10 min	30 min	462 sec	10 min	30 min
		Voice	180 min			240 min		
QCIF (176 x 144)		Normal	18 min	60 min	96 min	18 min	60 min	96 min
		Video	20 min	80 min	160 min	20 min	80 min	160 min
		Voice	180 min			240 min		
Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	Normal	34 min	96 min	137 min	34 min	96 min	137 min	
	Video	40 min	160 min	180 min	40 min	160 min	320 min	
	Voice	180 min			240 min			

不正規

● The recordable time is the estimate value.


## Shooting Still Images

You can shoot still images by using the camera. The shot still images are saved to the "Camera" folder of "My picture" in the FOMA phone or to the microSD card.

- See "Storage setting (Store in)" and "Select storage" for selecting a storage location.
- See page 330 for how to display saved still images.

### Shoot a Still Image

#### 1 Press .

- The Camera menu is displayed by ▶LifeKit▶Camera. You can start also by selecting "Photo mode" from the Camera menu.
- You can paste the Camera menu to the desktop. (See page 127)
- Change the direction of the FOMA phone according to the direction of the Top icon.



Finder display



#### 2 Press .

A still image is shot. The Post View display for confirmation appears.

- When "Focus" is set to "Face detection" or "Auto" while shooting with the outside camera, shooting starts after the focus operation.
- The image appears horizontally reversed (mirrored) when you shoot with the inside camera; however the image is correctly displayed when played back.
- When "Auto save set" is set to "ON", the Post View display does not appear; the still image is automatically saved. Go to step 4.

#### 3 Press .

The still image you shot is saved to the "Camera" folder.

- To save the still image as an mirrored image (horizontally reversed), press  (FUNC) and select "Mirror save".
- When "Store in" is set to "microSD", the still image is saved to the folder selected by "Select storage".
- Press  to cancel the shot still image and return to the Finder display.



Post View display

#### 4 Press to end the camera.

### Continuous Shooting

You can continuously shoot still images. You can set the number of frames, and shooting interval for auto-shooting. (See page 162)

#### 1 ▶ (Movie)▶ (Cont.)

- The camera starts in the mode you used last time, "Auto", "Manual", or "Auto bracket". To change Continuous Mode, see "Continuous mode" of "Cont. shooting set".





Finder display

## 2 Press (Record).



Continuous shooting starts.

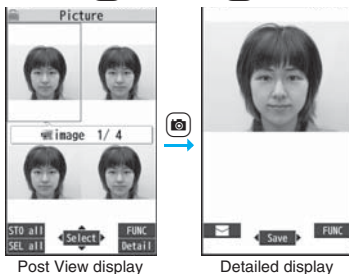
When "Continuous mode" is set to "Manual", press  (Record) the number of times of shooting frames. The Post View display for confirmation appears.

- When "Focus" is set to "Auto" while shooting with the outside camera, shooting starts after the focus operation.
- To cancel shooting midway, press . If you shoot in the "Auto" or "Auto bracket" mode of "Continuous mode", you can cancel also by pressing  (Quit). You can cancel shooting also by closing the FOMA phone.
- The image appears horizontally reversed (mirrored) when you shoot with the inside camera; however the image is correctly displayed when played back.
- When "Auto save set" is set to "ON", the Post View display does not appear; the still images are automatically saved. Go to step 4.

## 3 To select a still image and save it

Select a still image and press  (Detail) ►  (Save)

- Press  from the detailed display to show the previous or next still image.
- To save the still image as a mirrored image (horizontally reversed), press  (FUNC) and select "Mirror save".



### To select multiple still images and save them


Put a check mark for still images to be saved

►  (Save) ► Save or Mirror save

### To save all still images

 (STO all) ► Save or Mirror save

The still images you shot are saved to the "Camera" folder.


- Press  from the Post View display to cancel the shot still images and return to the Finder display.
- When "Store in" is set to "microSD", the still images are saved to the folder set by "Select storage".

## 4 Press to end the camera.

### Information

- The image quality may be coarse depending on "Image size" or "Display size".
- When you shoot, the tone selected for "Shutter sound" sounds regardless of the settings such as Manner Mode. The sound volume for shutter tone cannot be changed.
- Even when a mail message comes in while shooting, the shooting operation continues. Though unread message icon is displayed, the Mail Receiving display is not displayed.
- If you end the camera function by using Multitask while shooting, unsaved still images are deleted.
- When shooting, hold the FOMA phone securely to avoid blurred images.
- While you are shooting in Photo Mode or "Manual" of Continuous Mode, the Call/Charging indicator flickers. In "Auto"/"Auto bracket" of Continuous Mode, it lights.

### Function Menu of the Post View Display in Photo Mode/ Detailed Display in Continuous Mode

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Save	See page 155 and page 156.
Mirror save	See page 155 and page 156.
Attach to mail	You can save the still image you shot and attach it to an i-mode mail message. Go to step 2 on page 198. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You can compose an i-mode mail message also by pressing  (Attach to mail).</li></ul>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Attach location</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>By position loc.</b> . . . . Measures the current location and store the location information. After checking the location information, press  ( <b>Set</b> ).</p> <p><b>From loc. history</b> . . . . Select a piece of location information from Location History and store it.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you press  ( <b>Use</b> ) during measuring the current location, the confirmation display appears asking whether to display the result obtained so far from the location information.</li> <li>• To cancel measuring the current location, press  ( <b>CLR</b> ) or  ( <b>Cancel</b> ).</li> <li>• Press  ( <b>Retry</b> ) from the confirmation display for the location information to restart measuring in "Quality mode".</li> </ul>
<b>Set display</b>	<p>You can paste the still image to the Stand-by display and others for displaying. This is available only in Photo Mode. Go to "Set display" on page 331.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Even when "Store in" is set to "microSD", the still image is saved to the FOMA phone.</li> </ul>
<b>Change frame</b>	<p>You can replace the frame added to the shot still image by new one. This is available only in Photo Mode.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a frame.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press  to bring up the previous or next frame.</li> <li>• To reselect a frame, press  ( <b>Cancel</b> ).</li> </ul> <p>▶  ( <b>Set</b> )</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot release the frame.</li> </ul>
<b>Normal display/ Mirror display</b>	You can switch between a correct image and a mirrored image (horizontally reversed).
<b>Store in</b>	See page 162.
<b>Display size</b>	See page 162.
<b>File restriction</b>	See page 164.
<b>Icon</b>	See page 163.
<b>Cancel</b>	You do not save the shot still image.

## Function Menu of the Post View Display in Continuous Mode

- If you highlight a still image from the Post View display and press ( **Select** ), "✓" is added. Press ( **Select** ) again to release the selection.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Save</b>	See page 156.
<b>Store all/animat'n</b>	<p>You can save all the shot still images to store as an original animation.</p> <p>▶ <b>Save</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To save as a mirrored image (horizontally reversed), select "Mirror save".</li> </ul> <p>▶ <b>&lt;New&gt;</b></p>
<b>Store in</b>	See page 162.
<b>Normal display/ Mirror display</b>	You can switch between a correct image and a mirrored image (horizontally reversed).
<b>File restriction</b>	<p>You can set the file restrictions on the image on the Post View display.</p> <p>▶ <b>File unrestricted or File restricted</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See page 164 for the file restrictions.</li> </ul>
<b>Cancel</b>	You do not save the shot still images.

### Information

#### <Store all/animat'n>

- When "Store in" is set to "microSD", this function is not available.
- If you have shot a single still image only, this function is not available.

## Shooting Moving Images

You can shoot moving images by using the camera. The shot moving images are saved to the “Camera” folder of “motion” in the FOMA phone or to the microSD card.

- For selecting a storage location, see “Storage setting (Store in)” and “Select storage”.
- See page 338 for playing back the saved moving images.



- The Camera menu is displayed by

MENU ▶ LifeKit ▶ Camera.

You can start also by selecting “Movie mode” from the Camera menu.

- You can paste the Camera menu to the desktop. (See page 127)



Finder display



Recording starts.

- When “Focus” is set to “Auto” while shooting with the outside camera, shooting starts after the focus operation. While shooting, the subject is automatically focused regardless of the setting of “Focus”.
- When you shoot with the inside camera, the horizontally reversed (mirrored) image is displayed, but it is displayed normally when played back.




Recording ends. The Post View display for confirmation appears.

- Recording automatically ends when a call comes in, the low battery alarm sounds, or the FOMA phone is closed during recording.
- When “Auto save set” is set to “ON”, or “File size setting” is set to “Long time”, the Post View display does not appear; the moving image is automatically saved. When “Store in” is set to “microSD”, the moving image is saved to the folder set by “Select storage”. Go to step 5.

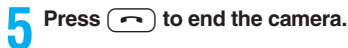


The moving image you shot is saved to the “Camera” folder.

- Press  to cancel the shot moving image and return to the Finder display.



Post View display



### If recording ends or the image quality deteriorates while shooting

When you use a microSD card that you repeatedly save/delete data files to/from, the writing speed slows down, recording might end midway or the image quality might deteriorate.

Do the following operations to improve such symptoms:

1. **Copy all the data files from the microSD card onto your personal computer as they are.**
  - When your personal computer is set so as to hide folders and files, change the settings to display those folders and files, and then operate. For how to change the settings, refer to the operating manual or Help on the personal computer you use.
  - Do not change the names of folders and files copied to the personal computer.
2. **Use the personal computer to delete all the data files on the microSD card.**
  - Do not format the microSD card. The data files might not be played back.
3. **Copy the data files copied in step 1 back to the microSD card.**
  - Be sure to copy them back to the same microSD card. Even if you save the copyrighted data files on another microSD card, you cannot play them back.

### Information



- The shutter tone set by “Shutter sound” sounds when shooting starts and ends regardless of the settings such as Manner Mode. The sound volume for shutter tone cannot be changed.



## Information

- If you do key operations while recording, the operation sound may be picked up.
- The Call/Charging indicator lights during recording.
- When you switch the subject you are shooting to a subject with a difference in perspective, it takes time to focus on the new subject.
- When you have difficulty focusing on a subject, switch to another subject. Then the subject might come into focus.
- The operating speed of Autofocus is slowed down in a dark place.

## Function Menu of the Post View Display in Movie Mode

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Play	See page 338.
Save	See page 158.
Attach to mail	You can save the recorded moving image and attach it to an i-mode mail message. Go to step 2 on page 198. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You can compose an i-mode mail message also by pressing  ().</li></ul>
Set as stand-by	You can save the recorded moving image and set it for the Stand-by display.
Set as stand-byWide	
Store in	See page 162.
Display size	See page 162.
File restriction	See page 164.
Icon	See page 163.
Cancel	You do not save the recorded moving image.

## Information

<Set as stand-by> <Set as stand-byWide>

- Some moving images might not be displayed correctly.
- See page 115 for playback of the moving image set for the Stand-by display.

## Changing Settings for Shooting Images

You can set the camera when shooting images.

### Use Zoom

You can display the image through the camera in “Wide” or “Tele”.

The maximum magnification for each size is as follows:

#### ■ Outside camera


Camera mode	Size	Level of zoom	The maximum magnifications (Approx.)
Photo	5M (2592 x 1944)	1 level	1.0 times
	3.7M Wide (2592 x 1456)	1 level	1.0 times
	3M (2048 x 1536)	6 levels	1.2 times
	2M Wide (1920 x 1080)	6 levels	1.3 times
	2M (1600 x 1200)	11 levels	1.6 times
	Stand-by (480 x 854)	11 levels	1.5 times
	VGA (640 x 480)	31 levels	3.0 times
	CIF (352 x 288)	31 levels	5.5 times
	QVGA (240 x 320)	31 levels	8.1 times
	QCIF (176 x 144)	31 levels	11.0 times
Continuous	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	31 levels	15.1 times
	VGA (640 x 480)	11 levels	1.9 times
	CIF (352 x 288)	21 levels	2.7 times
	QVGA (240 x 320)	31 levels	3.8 times
	QCIF (176 x 144)	31 levels	5.5 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	31 levels	7.5 times
Movie (Image stabilizer: Auto)	VGA (640 x 480)	11 levels	1.6 times
	HVGA Wide (640 x 352)	11 levels	1.6 times
	QVGA (320 x 240)	21 levels	2.4 times
	QCIF (176 x 144)	31 levels	4.4 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	31 levels	6.0 times
Movie (Image stabilizer: OFF)	VGA (640 x 480)	11 levels	1.9 times
	HVGA Wide (640 x 352)	11 levels	1.9 times
	QVGA (320 x 240)	21 levels	3.0 times
	QCIF (176 x 144)	31 levels	5.5 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	31 levels	7.5 times

## ■ Inside camera

Camera mode	Size	Level of zoom	The maximum magnifications (Approx.)
Photo/ Continuous	VGA (640 x 480)	1 level	1.0 times
	CIF (352 x 288)	11 levels	1.6 times
	QVGA (240 x 320)	11 levels	1.5 times
	QCIF (176 x 144)	31 levels	3.3 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	31 levels	5.0 times
Movie	VGA (640 x 480)	1 level	1.0 times
	HVGA Wide (640 x 332)	1 level	1.0 times
	QVGA (320 x 240)	21 levels	2.0 times
	QCIF (176 x 144)	31 levels	3.5 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	31 levels	5.0 times

1 Finder display ▶ Use  to adjust the magnification.

### Information

- The image quality may slightly change when you select "Wide" or "Tele".
- "Tele" is released in the following cases:
  - When you press  to end the camera
  - When a size is changed
  - When camera mode is switched

## Use Focus Function


You can shoot with the outside camera focused on a subject.

- When "Focus" is set to "Face detection", faces are detected in the first place. Up to five faces are detected, and the image is shot with a single face of those faces is focused. When the detection fails, the auto-focus function works and then the image is shot.

1 Finder display ▶ 

When the subject is focused, a confirmation tone sounds, then the frame becomes green and the focus is locked.

When the subject is not focused, the frame becomes red.

- Press  to focus again.

### Information

- If "Movie type set" is set to "Voice" in Movie Mode, you cannot use Autofocus.
- "Face detection" is available only in Photo Mode.
- When "Face detection" is set, you cannot paste a cushy mark in the image.
- Even when "Focus" is set to "Face detection", you might not be able to detect the face in the following cases:
  - When the face faces sideways or askew
  - When the face is at a slant
  - When part of the face is covered by glasses, a cap, or shadows
  - When the face is extremely small, large, or dim when compared to overall screen size
  - When the face is placed at the edges of the display
- When "Focus" is set to "Face detection", you are advised to shoot images within 2.5 m of the distance from the face.

## Setting Image Size and Image Quality

### Function Menu of the Finder Display





Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Inside camera/ Outside camera	You can switch between the inside camera and outside camera.
CHG camera-mode	▶ Select a mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you select "Continuous mode", the camera starts in the mode you used last time, "Auto", "Manual", or "Auto bracket".</li> </ul>
Image size	▶ Select an image size. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you shoot a photo for sending during a voice call, you can select only "QCIF (176 x 144)" and "Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)".</li> </ul>
File size setting [Movie Mode only]	▶ Select an item. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Mail restrict'n (S)</b> . . . You can shoot up to 500 Kbytes.</li> <li><b>Mail restrict'n (L)</b> . . . You can shoot up to 2 Mbytes.</li> <li><b>Long time</b> . . . . . You can shoot for a long time. The moving image is saved to the microSD card.</li> </ul>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Image quality</b>	You can set the image quality for saving. ▶ <b>Select an image quality.</b>
<b>Camera settings (Brightness)</b>	You can adjust to -3 (dark) through +3 (bright). ▶ <b>Brightness ▶ Select a brightness level.</b>
At Camera start-up	
±0	
<b>Camera settings (White balance)</b>	You can adjust the coloring of the image on the Finder display to create a natural color tone. ▶ <b>White balance ▶ Select an item.</b>
At Camera start-up	
Auto	
	<b>Auto</b> . . . . . For adjusting white balance automatically <b>Fine</b> . . . . . For shooting outdoors in fine weather <b>Cloudy</b> . . . . . For shooting in cloudy weather or in the shade <b>Light bulb</b> . . . . . For shooting under incandescent light <b>Fluorescent light</b> . . . . . For shooting under fluorescent lighting
<b>Camera settings (Color mode set)</b>	▶ <b>Color mode set ▶ Select a color mode.</b>
At Camera start-up	
Normal	
	<b>Normal</b> . . . . . Shoots in normal color. <b>Sepia</b> . . . . . Shoots in sepia color. <b>Monochrome</b> . . . . . Shoots in monochrome. <b>Vivid</b> . . . . . Makes the contours vivid, raises the saturation, and then shoots. <b>Natural</b> . . . . . Makes the contours smooth, lowers the saturation, and then shoots. <b>Whitening</b> . . . . . Shoots faces in bright color. <b>Suntan</b> . . . . . Shoots faces in dark color.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Camera settings (Photo mode)</b>	You can set a photo mode suitable for the place. ▶ <b>Photo mode ▶ Select a photo mode.</b>
At Camera start-up	
Normal	
	<b>Normal</b> . . . . . Standard mode <b>Portrait</b> . . . . . For shooting portraits <b>Sports</b> . . . . . For shooting moving subjects such as athletes <b>Food</b> . . . . . For shooting dishes <b>Scenery</b> . . . . . For shooting scenery <b>Night mode</b> . . . . . For shooting in dark places such as in nighttime <b>Backlight</b> . . . . . For shooting against the sun (from behind) <b>Character</b> . . . . . For shooting characters <b>Snow</b> . . . . . For shooting in snowy places <b>Sunset</b> . . . . . For shooting in sunset <b>Pet</b> . . . . . For shooting pets, etc.
<b>Camera settings (Focus)</b>	You can set the focus of the outside camera. ▶ <b>Focus ▶ Select an item.</b>
At Camera start-up	
Photo Mode: Face detection Continuous/Movie Mode:Auto	
	<b>Face detection</b> . . . . . For focusing on a person's face <b>Auto</b> . . . . . For focusing automatically before shooting (See page 160) <b>Close-up</b> . . . . . For focusing on a subject in a short distance <b>Landscape</b> . . . . . For focusing on a landscape in a long distance ● "Face detection" is available only in Photo Mode.
<b>Camera settings (Shutter sound)</b>	You can set a shutter sound. You can set a shutter sound each for Photo Mode (Continuous Mode) and Movie Mode. ▶ <b>Shutter sound ▶ Select a shutter sound.</b> ● While you are selecting, the shutter tone sounds for confirmation.
<b>Camera settings (Flicker correction)</b>	You can suppress blur on the Finder display for when shooting with the outside camera. ▶ <b>Flicker correction ▶ Auto, Mode 1 (50Hz) or Mode 2 (60Hz)</b>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Storage setting (Store in)</b>	You can set the storage location for the still or moving images you shot. ▶ <b>Store in</b> ▶ <b>Phone or microSD</b>
<b>Storage setting (Auto save set)</b>	You can set whether to automatically save the image after shooting. When "Store in" is "Phone", the image is saved to the "Camera" folder. When "Store in" is "microSD", the image is saved to the folder set by "Select storage". ▶ <b>Auto save set</b> ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Storage setting (File restriction)</b>	See page 164.
<b>Img. stabilizer</b> [Photo/Movie Mode]	You can correct camera shake for when shooting with the outside camera. ▶ <b>Auto or OFF</b>
<b>Auto timer</b>	See page 164.
<b>Shooting effect (Shoot with frame)</b>	You can shoot a still image with a frame. ▶ <b>Shoot with frame</b> ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> ▶ <b>Select a frame.</b>
At Camera start-up OFF	
[Photo Mode only]	
<b>Shooting effect (Cushy mark)</b>	You can shoot a person's face with a cushy mark pasted. The cushy mark is automatically pasted in an appropriate position. ▶ <b>Cushy mark</b> ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> ▶ <b>Select a cushy mark.</b>
At Camera start-up OFF	
[Photo/Movie Mode]	

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Cont. shooting set. (Continuous mode)</b>	▶ <b>Continuous mode</b> ▶ <b>Select a mode.</b> <b>Auto</b> . . . . . Shoots automatically at an interval and with the number of frames as specified by "Shot interval" and "Shot number". <b>Manual</b> . . . . . Shoots one by one manually with the number of frames specified by "Shot number". <b>Auto bracket</b> . . . . . Shoots automatically nine still images at an interval of about 0.3 second while changing the brightness and color tone one by one. ● Select "Manual" to display the number of frames for continuous shooting.
<b>Cont. shooting set. (Shot interval)</b> [Continuous Mode only]	▶ <b>Shot interval</b> ▶ <b>Select a shooting interval.</b> ● You can set this only in "Auto" of Continuous Mode.
<b>Cont. shooting set. (Shot number)</b> [Continuous Mode only]	▶ <b>Shot number</b> ▶ <b>Enter the number of photos.</b> ● When "Image size" is set to "VGA (640 x 480)" or "CIF (352 x 288)", you cannot change "Shot number". ● You can set this only in "Auto" or "Manual" of Continuous Mode.
<b>Movie type set</b>	You can select whether to record both the video and voice, or one of them when you shoot the moving image. ▶ <b>Normal, Video, or Voice</b>
At Camera start-up Normal	
[Movie Mode only]	
<b>Display size</b>	You can set whether to display a moving image or still image in the original size (Actual size) or to fit to the screen size on the Finder display. ▶ <b>Actual size or Fit in display</b>
<b>Common replay mode</b> [Movie Mode only]	You can set a shooting size appropriate for attaching to i-mode mail. ▶ <b>YES</b> ● Image Size is set to "QCIF", File Size Setting is set to "Mail restrict'n (S)", and Image Quality (Movie Mode) is set to "Normal".

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Icon	You can set whether to display icons. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> ● Even if you set the icons not to be displayed, the icon such as “  ”, “  ”, “  ” or “  ” appears during communication or when you receive a mail message or Message R/F.
Memory info	You can display the used memory space (estimate)/number of stored items.

### Information

#### <Inside camera/Outside camera>

- When “Image size” is set to larger than “Stand-by (480 x 854)”, and you switch to the inside camera, the camera starts up in “VGA (640 x 480)”.

#### <File size setting>

- When the “File size setting” is set to “Long time”, “Store in” is set to “microSD”.

#### <Camera settings>

- Note that the image may blur in Night Mode because the exposure takes a longer time.
- If you set “Flicker correction” to “Auto”, it may take a while to automatically adjust the image quality. In this case, switch to Mode 1 or Mode 2 according to the power frequency provided in the shooting location.
- Even if you change the setting of “Brightness”, “White balance”, “Color mode set”, or “Focus”, the setting appropriate for each “Photo mode” applies when you change “Photo mode”.

#### <Storage setting>

- See “Select storage” for how to set a storage location on the microSD card.
- If you change “File size setting” to “Long time”, “Store in” is set to “microSD” and “Storage setting” cannot be operated.
- When “Auto save set” is set to “ON”, the image is saved to the latest folder if “Select storage” is not set or the folder set as a destination folder is deleted.

### Information

#### <Img. stabilizer>

- This function is only for decreasing the degree of camera shake, so its effect differs depending on the subject or condition.
- Image Stabilizer might not work effectively in the following cases:
  - When the camera shakes to a great extent
  - When zooming is in use
  - When shooting moving subjects
- When “Photo mode” of “Camera settings” is set to “Sports”, “Night mode”, or “Pet” in Photo Mode, “Img. stabilizer” becomes invalid.
- Residual images might remain in the area where the subject is moving, or noise might be found in overall area. In that case, set this function to “OFF”.
- In Movie Mode, the shooting range varies depending on the “Auto” or “OFF” setting because peripheral pixels are used for the processing by Image Stabilizer.
- When this function is activated in Photo Mode, the processing time after shooting might be longer about two seconds due to the processing by Image Stabilizer.
- You cannot use Image Stabilizer for the inside camera.

#### <Shooting effect>

- When “Image size” is set to larger than “2M (1600 x 1200)”, you cannot shoot with a frame.
- If you shoot a still image with a frame using the inside camera and save it, the frame is also horizontally reversed when the still image is automatically reversed as a correct image.
- You cannot save the still image shot with a frame as the mirrored image.
- When “Image size” is set to larger than “Stand-by (480 x 854)”, cushy marks cannot be pasted in Photo Mode.
- When “Focus” is set to “Face detection”, cushy marks cannot be pasted in Photo Mode.

#### <Cont. shooting set.>

- The number of shots that can be set differs depending on the image size. The number of shots that can be set is as follows:
  - VGA (640 x 480): 4
  - CIF (352 x 288): 4
  - QVGA (240 x 320): 5 through 10
  - QCIF (176 x 144): 5 through 20
  - Sub-QCIF (128 x 96): 5 through 20

## Information

### <Display size>

- When "Image size" is set to a size larger than "HVGA Wide (640 x 352)", "Fit in display" always applies.
- When "Image size" is set to "QCIF (176 x 144)" or "Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)", the image is enlarged two times at both lengthwise and sidewise when it is displayed in "Actual size".
- The setting for the Finder display is reflected in the Post View display; however the setting for the Post View display is not reflected in the Finder display.

### <Common replay mode>

- You cannot operate when you set "File size setting" to "Long time".

## File Restriction

You can set the file restrictions when you save the shot still or moving image. The operation of attaching to i-mode mail is disabled at the receiving end who has received the image as the first distribution.

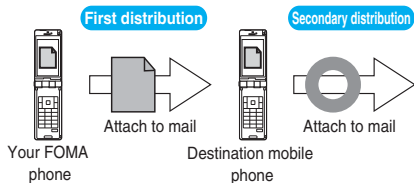
- 1 Finder display   Storage setting  
▶ File restriction

or

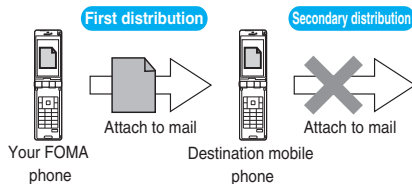
Post View display in Photo Mode, Movie Mode or Photo sending/Detailed display in Continuous Mode   File restriction

- 2 File unrestricted or File restricted

### ■ For "File unrestricted"



### ■ For "File restricted"



## Information

- Even when you set "File restriction" to "File restricted", the still or moving images can be output from the destination mobile phone by transmitting the images using infrared data exchange or by copying them to the microSD card.
- After saving, you can use "File restriction" on page 332 to change the settings.
- When you set "File size setting" to "Long time" in Movie Mode, "File restriction" becomes "File unrestricted".

## Auto Timer



At Camera start-up	OFF
--------------------	-----

- 1 Finder display   Auto timer  ON or OFF  
▶ Enter a delay time (seconds).





- Enter from "01" through "15", in two digits.

### When Auto Timer is set to "ON"

"

appears on the Finder display. If you press , a confirmation tone sounds and "

blinks. The Call/Charging indicator flickers every about 1 second until about 5 seconds before shooting. From about 5 seconds before shooting, the Call/Charging indicator flickers every about 0.5 second, and the confirmation tone sounds every about 1 second. Shooting takes place after the set delay time has elapsed.

- To cancel shooting, press   or  while the Call/Charging indicator is flickering. Even if you cancel shooting, "Auto timer" stays set to "ON".
- You can shoot immediately by pressing  before the delay time has elapsed.
- When you shoot, a confirmation tone sounds regardless of the settings such as Manner Mode. The sound volume for the confirmation tone cannot be changed.

## Information

- You cannot use Auto Timer in "Manual" of Continuous Mode.
- Auto Timer is set to "OFF" when shooting ends.

## <Bar Code Reader>

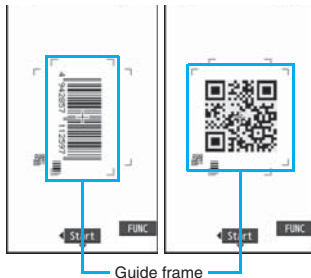
# Using Bar Code Reader

You can use the outside camera to scan JAN codes and QR codes and store them as data.

From the scanned data, you can make calls, compose i-mode mail messages, and access Internet web pages, and so on.

### ■ When scanning with Bar Code Reader

- Take the character strings as large as possible within the guide frame.
- Autofocus works when you scan a code about 10 cm or more away from it. When you scan a code in the out-of-focus state, the recognition rate lowers.
- Scan so that the camera is in parallel with the code.



### ■ JAN Code

JAN Code is a bar code that denotes numerals with the vertical bars of a different width. You can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) JAN codes.

- "4942857112597" is displayed when you scan this bar code with the FOMA phone.



### ■ QR Code

QR Code is one of the 2-dimensional codes that denotes data in the vertical and horizontal directions.

Kanji, katakana, alphanumeric characters, and pictographs are displayed when you scan it.

Some QR codes have image or melody information.

- "株式会社NTTドコモ (NTT DoCoMo, Inc.)" is displayed when you scan this QR code with the FOMA phone.



## Scan a Code

At Bar Code Reader  
start-up

Brightness:  $\pm 0$   
Zoom: Magnified view

You can store up to 5 scanned codes.

You can scan up to 16 divided QR codes.




## 1 LifeKit Scan code

The Bar Code Reader menu is displayed.

- You can paste the Bar Code Reader menu to the desktop. (See page 127)

## 2 Fit a code to be scanned to the guide frame and press .












When the focus is locked, a confirmation tone sounds and the cross mark becomes green.

- Press  (FUNC) and select "Brightness"; then you can adjust brightness to -3 (dark) through +3 (bright).
- Press  to show the reduced display, and press  to return to the former display.



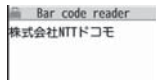
### 3 Press (Start).

The code is scanned. (The shutter tone does not sound.)

- To cancel scanning, press  or .
- When scanning is completed, the scanning completion tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights. The sound level is fixed and cannot be changed. However, the tone does not sound in Manner Mode or while "Phone" of "Ring volume" is set to "Silent".
- " " is displayed for melody files and " " or " " is displayed for incompatible or damaged files.
- While you are entering (editing) characters, the Scanned Code Result display does not appear; the Text Data Confirmation display of the scanned code appears. To enter the scanned code, press  (). To discard it, press  () or  (). The characters that cannot be displayed are replaced by half-pitch spaces. When the code containing no text data has been scanned, the code is not correctly displayed.
- If scanning is not completed in a certain period, the scanning is suspended and the Scanning Code display returns.
- When the scanned code is part of divided QR codes, select "OK" to repeat step 2 and step 3 for scanning the rest of codes.

### 4 (FUNC) ▶ Save result ▶ OK

The scanned data is stored.









Scanned Code Result display

#### Information

- You cannot scan bar codes or 2-dimensional codes other than JAN codes or QR codes.
- Scanning may take a long time. Hold the FOMA phone securely with your hands during scanning.
- You may not be able to scan codes correctly depending on scratch, dirt, damage, the quality of printed material, light reflection, or QR code version.
- You cannot scan some codes depending on the type or size.

#### Function Menu of the Scanned Code Result Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Save result	See page 166.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Display list	You can bring up the Bar Code Reader list when one or more files are stored.
Internet	You can connect to the highlighted URL via i-mode or Full Browser. ▶ <b>i-mode or Full Browser</b> ▶ YES • You can connect to the URL also by highlighting the URL and pressing  (  .
Compose message	You can compose an i-mode mail message to send to the highlighted mail address. Go to step 3 on page 198. • You can compose it also by highlighting the mail address and pressing  (  .
Dialing	You can make a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk call to the highlighted phone number. ▶ <b>Select a dialing type.</b> • When you select "Select image", select an image to send to the other party during the videophone call. • When you select "Compose SMS", you can compose an SMS message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 244. • You can make a call also by highlighting the phone number and pressing  (  .
Add to phonebook	▶ <b>Dial</b> • To make an international call, select "Int'l dial assist". (See page 61) • To set Caller ID Notification, select "Notify caller ID". (See step 2 on page 48) See page 96.
Add bookmark	You can bookmark the site name and URL. ▶ <b>YES</b> • Select "Page title" to edit the title. ▶ <b>OK</b> ▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b>



Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Save image</b>	<p>You can save the scanned image data to set to the Stand-by display or other displays.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b></p> <p>Go to step 3 on page 182.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● See page 186 when images are stored to the maximum.</li> </ul>
<b>Save melody</b>	<p>You can save the scanned melody data to set it as a ring tone or other tones.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES ▶ Select a destination folder.</b></p> <p>Go to step 2 on page 183.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Select " " to play back the melody.</li> <li>● See page 186 when melodies are stored to the maximum.</li> </ul>
<b>Save ToruCa</b>	<p>You can save the scanned ToruCa file.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Select " " to display the ToruCa file.</li> <li>● See page 186 when ToruCa files are stored to maximum.</li> </ul>
<b>Start i-appli</b>	<p>You can start up i-appli from the scanned data.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>Copy</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select a start point for copying</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Select an end point for copying.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can copy codes of up to 5,000 full-pitch/10,000 half-pitch characters.</li> <li>● See page 442 for pasting copied characters.</li> </ul>

### Information

#### <Internet>

- URL can be displayed in up to 512 half-pitch characters by Bar Code Reader and up to 256 half-pitch characters by Text Reader.

#### <Compose message>

- If the scanned data contains nonenterable characters, you cannot enter it as a mail address, and those characters may become spaces in the text field.

#### <Dialing>

- You cannot make emergency calls by scanning "110", "119" or "118".

#### <Add bookmark>

- You can display up to 512 half-pitch characters for a URL and can store up to 256 characters from the beginning.

### Information

#### <Save image>

- The file name and title for the saved image are "imageXXX" (XXX are numerals).

#### <Save melody>

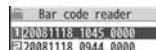
- The file name for the saved melody is "melodyXXX" (XXX are numerals).
- For the melody with no title, the file name is displayed as the title.
- When playing back the melody, it is played back at the sound volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume".

## Display the Saved Data List

### 1 MENU ▶ LifeKit ▶ Bar code reader ▶ Saved data

The titles for stored data are displayed from the latest one.

- Select a title to show the Scanned Code Result display.



Bar Code Reader list

### Information

- The titles for the scanned data are as follows:

(Example) When the scanned data is saved at 10:00 on November 18, 2008;  
Title name: 20081118\_1000\_0000

- If you store multiple data items for the same date and time, the lower four-digit numbers increase up to "9999".

## Function Menu of the Bar Code Reader List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Edit title</b>	<p>▶ <b>Enter a title.</b></p> <p>You can enter up to 9 full-pitch/18 half-pitch characters.</p>
<b>Result</b>	<p>You can bring up the Scanned Code Result display for stored data.</p>
<b>Delete (Delete this)</b>	<p>▶ <b>Delete this ▶ YES</b></p>

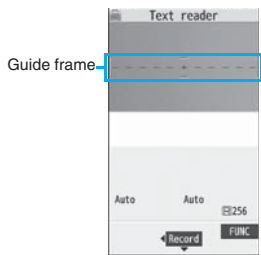
Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Delete (Delete all)	▶ Delete all ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

## <Text Reader> Using Text Reader

You can scan printed phone numbers, mail addresses or alphanumeric characters such as URLs using the outside camera, and store them as text information. Use the text information to make calls, compose i-mode mail, connect to the Internet, and so on.

### ■ When scanning with Text Reader

- Take the character strings as large as possible within the guide frame.
- Autofocus works when you scan characters about 10 cm or more away from them. When you scan characters in the out-of-focus state, the recognition rate lowers.
- Scan the character string with the camera set in parallel.



### Scan Text

At Text Reader start-up	Zoom: Magnified view
-------------------------	----------------------

You can store eight scanned data files of up to 256 half-pitch characters per item.

The number of characters you can scan at a time is up to 50 half-pitch characters, and you can scan the increased characters in parts.

### 1 [MENU] ▶ LifeKit ▶ Text reader ▶ Scan text

The Text Reader menu is displayed.

- You can paste the Text Reader menu to the desktop. (See page 127)

## 2 Fit the characters to be scanned to the guide frame and press [OK].

When the focus is locked, a confirmation tone sounds and the guide frame becomes green.

- Press [OK] to show the reduced display, and press [OK] to return to the former display.



Scanning Text display

## 3 Press [OK] (Record).

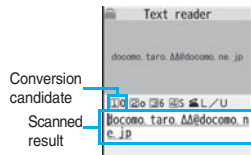
The characters are scanned. (The shutter tone does not sound.)

- To cancel scanning, press [CLR].
- When scanning is completed, the scanning completion tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights. The sound level is fixed and cannot be changed. However, the tone does not sound in Manner Mode or while "Phone" of "Ring volume" is set to "Silent".

## 4 Confirm the scanned result.

The scanned characters are underlined. Confirm the scanned characters for mistakes.

- Press [CLR] to restart scanning.
- To store the characters without correcting, go to step 7.




Scanned Text Confirmation display

## 5 Press [OK] to highlight a character to be corrected ▶ Press the number of the conversion candidate.

- Conversion candidates are displayed up to four kinds for each character.
- When you want to correct a character to other than the conversion candidate, highlight the character to be corrected and press [Mode], then enter a character after switching to "Alphabet entry mode" or "Numeric entry mode". However you cannot enter characters such as ".ne.jp" or ".co.jp" by pressing [X].


## 6 Press (Set).

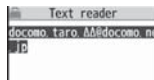
The scanned characters are set.

- To link characters, repeat step 2 through step 6.
- To release the set characters, press .

## 7 (FUNC) ▶ Store

The scanned characters are stored.

- When scanned text contains "tel", "@", or "http://", you can execute Phone To or Web To function by selecting the text. (See page 187) You can select only first item even if multiple items are found.
- Press  (Overwrite) to overwrite the scanned characters and activate Text Reader. Go to step 2.



Scanned Text Result display

### Information

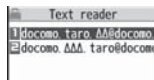
- Hold the FOMA phone securely with your hands during scanning so that you can scan characters correctly.
- Characters you can scan are alphabet letters (uppercase and lowercase), numerals, and symbols (#, &, (, ), -, ., /, :, @, [, ], \_ , ~, ?, =, %, and +). You cannot scan kanji and hiragana characters. You might not be able to scan those correctly depending on the surroundings such as lighting.
- You cannot scan handwritten characters correctly.
- You might not be able to scan the following:  
Characters received by a FAX/Copied characters/Designed characters/Characters having no certain space between characters/Characters difficult to identify from the background.

## Display the Saved Data List

### 1 ▶ LifeKit ▶ Text reader ▶ Saved data

Up to 22 half-pitch characters are displayed for each stored data.

- Select a data item to show the Scanned Text Result display.






Text Reader list

## Function Menu of the Scanning Text Display/Scanned Text Confirmation Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Store</b>	See page 169.
<b>Edit</b>	You can edit and store the scanned character string. ▶ <b>Edit the text.</b>
<b>Recognition mode</b>	You can set this mode according to the type of the character string you want to scan. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b>
At Text Reader start-up	<b>Auto setting</b> . . . . . Automatically recognizes the type of characters.
Auto setting	<b>URL</b> . . . . . Select this when you scan a URL. "http://" or "https://" is automatically entered to the head of the character string when it is stored.
	<b>Mail address</b> . . . . . Select this when you scan a mail address.
	<b>Phone number</b> . . . . . Select this when you scan a phone number.
	<b>Number</b> . . . . . Select this when you scan numerals.
	<b>Free character</b> . . . . . Select this when you scan alphabetic characters that are not especially specified.
<b>NEGA/POSI mode</b>	You can set this mode to fit to the printing conditions of the character string you want to scan. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b>
At Text Reader start-up	<b>Auto setting</b> . . . . . Automatically recognizes printing conditions.
Auto setting	<b>Positive fix</b> . . . . . Select this when deep color characters are printed over faint color ground.
	<b>Negative fix</b> . . . . . Select this when faint color characters are printed over deep color ground.

## Function Menu of the Scanned Text Result Display/Text Reader List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Edit	▶ <b>Edit the text.</b>
Internet	See page 166.
Compose message	<p>You can compose an i-mode mail message to send to the scanned mail address as a destination address. Go to step 3 on page 198.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can compose an i-mode mail message also by pressing  ()</li> </ul>
Dialing	See page 166.
Store mail add.	See page 96.
Store phone No.	See page 96.
Add bookmark	<p>You can bookmark the URL you have scanned.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>OK</b></li> <li>• Select "Page title" to edit the title.</li> <li>▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b></li> </ul>
Search phonebook	<p>You can search for Phonebook entries using the scanned phone number or mail address.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select a search method</b> </li> </ul> <p>The Phonebook list that corresponds to the phone number or mail address is displayed.</p>
Display detail/ Display list	You can switch between the Scanned Text Result display and Text Reader list.
Delete (Delete this)	▶ <b>Delete this</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>
Delete (Delete all)	▶ <b>Delete all</b> ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

# i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

What is i-mode? .....	172	<b>Using Certificates</b>	
<b>Displaying Sites</b>		Operating SSL Certificates .....	<SSL Certificate> 190
Accessing Sites .....	<Menu> 172	Setting FirstPass .....	<Client Certificate> 190
How to View/to Operate Sites .....	173	Changing a CA Center .....	<Certificate Host> 192
Displaying Most Recently Accessed Site .....	<Last URL> 176	<b>Using i-motion</b>	
Using My Menu .....	<My Menu> 177	What is i-motion? .....	193
Changing i-mode Password .....	<Change i-mode Password> 177	Obtaining i-motion Movies from Sites .....	
Displaying Internet Web Pages .....	<Enter URL> 178	..... <Obtain i-motion Movie>	193
Bookmarking Web Pages or Sites for Quick Access .....	<Bookmark> 178	Setting Automatic Replay of i-motion Movies .....	
Saving Site Contents .....	<Screen Memo> 180	..... < motion Auto-play>	194
<b>Downloading Images or Melodies from Sites</b>		<b>Using i-Channel</b>	
Downloading Files or Data Items from Sites .....	182	What is i-Channel? .....	195
<b>Uploading Images or Moving Images to Sites</b>		Using i-Channel .....	195
Uploading Files to Sites .....	186	Setting How Ticker is Displayed .....	196
<b>Convenient Functions of i-mode</b>			
Operations from Highlighted Information .....	187		
<b>Setting Functions of i-mode</b>			
Setting i-mode .....	<i-mode Settings> 188		
Setting Connection Timeout .....	<Set Connection Timeout> 189		
Changing a Host from i-mode (ISP Connection Communication) .....	<Host Selection> 189		

## What is i-mode?

**i-mode is the service that makes use of the display of the FOMA phone supporting i-mode (i-mode phone) to enable you to use online services such as site (program) access, Internet access, and i-mode mail.**

- i-mode is a pay service that is available on a subscription basis.
- For details on i-mode, refer to the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

### ■ Before Using i-mode


- Contents of sites (programs) and web pages (Internet web pages) are generally protected by copyrights law. Data such as text and images that you obtained to the i-mode phone from sites (programs) and Internet web pages can be used for personal entertainment but cannot be used in whole or in part, as it is or after modification, for commercial purposes or sent as e-mail attachments or output from your i-mode phone to other devices, unless you have permission from the copyright holders.
- If you replace the UIM with another one or turn on the power with the UIM not inserted, you cannot display/play back files depending on the model, such as still images/moving images/melodies obtained from sites, attached files (still images/moving images/melodies and other files) sent/received by mail, screen memos, or Messages R/F.
- When the file whose display and/or playback is restricted by the UIM is set for the Stand-by display or specified ring tone, the FOMA phone works with the default contents when you replace the existing UIM with new one or turn on the power with the UIM not inserted.





<  Menu >

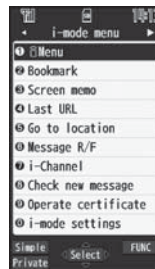
## Accessing Sites

**You can use a variety of services offered by IPs (Information Providers). From the display of the FOMA phone, you can check your bank balance, reserve tickets, and do similar tasks. (IPs offer different types of services. Some of them need to be applied for separately.)**

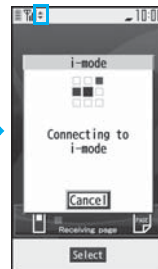
## 1 Menu

While you are online, "" blinks.

- "" blinks while you are using the i-mode service (during i-mode standby).
- To cancel during the connection, select "Cancel". To cancel while obtaining a page, press  (Quit).
- To end i-mode, press  and select "YES" while the site is displayed. "" goes off and i-mode ends. It may take longer to end i-mode.








i-mode menu





## 2 Select an item (link).

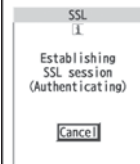
Repeat selecting items (links) to display the desired site.

- You can select underscored items on the displayed site. When you select an item, it is highlighted.
- If there is a number at the head of the item showing the link, you can connect to that link directly by pressing the numeric key corresponding to that number. (Some sites cannot be connected.)
- While the site is displayed, press  to scroll through line by line. Press  (Page ) or  (Page ) to scroll through page by page.

### To obtain an SSL site (SSL pages)

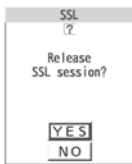
The display on the right appears. When obtaining is completed, the SSL page appears and "" lights.

- To cancel during authentication, select "Cancel". To cancel obtaining the SSL page after authentication, press  (Quit).



## To return to a non-SSL site

The display on the right appears. Select "YES" to display the ordinary site; "NO" goes off.



### Information

- Depending on the site, you may need to apply for the service in writing separately, or to pay information fees to use it.
- The maximum display size of the images on the site is 1400 x 480 dots. If an image is larger than 1400 x 480 dots, it is displayed shrunk with a proportional ratio retained.
- Depending on the site, " " might be displayed when the image is not correctly displayed.
- Depending on the site or data, you might not be able to download or save melodies, PDF files, software programs, and others.
- With some Internet web pages (sites) supporting i-mode, the color setting might make the text difficult or impossible to see.
- When you are asked from the site to send information about music you have played back on the FOMA phone, the confirmation display appears for about sending your music information. Select "YES" to send the information (title names, artist names, and played dates) of the music played back on the FOMA phone. The sent music information is used for the IP (information provider) to provide customized information to you.

## Change to Menu in English

The Menu can be displayed in English.

### 1 [Menu] [English] Menu [English] iMenu

[Menu] in English will be displayed.

- To change back to the Japanese display, select "日本語 (Japanese)".



### Information

- The Menu in English differs slightly from the Menu in Japanese.
- Items such as Tokusuru Menu and News are not shown on the English Menu.
- Generally, "What's New" site will be updated every other Monday.
- English sites are displayed after entering Menu list (sites differ from Japanese version).
- Access news from DoCoMo and usage regulations on "What's New".

## How to View/to Operate Sites

Basic operating methods while a site is displayed are explained.

### Return to Obtained Previous Page/Go to Obtained Next Page

The FOMA phone saves the files such as the displayed Internet web pages to a temporal storage area called a cache. By pressing [Left Arrow], you can bring up the page stored in the cache without communicating.

- When you bring up a page that exceeds the cache size on the FOMA phone or a page that is configured (created) to always read its latest information, the FOMA phone starts communication.
- When i-mode ends, the cache is cleared.

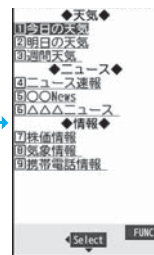
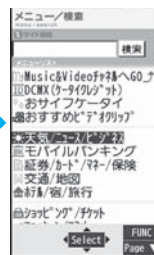
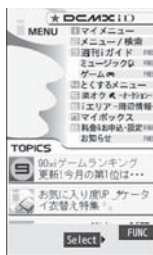
1 Press [Left Arrow] to return to the previous page.

Press [Right Arrow] to go to the next page.



Two pages before

One page before

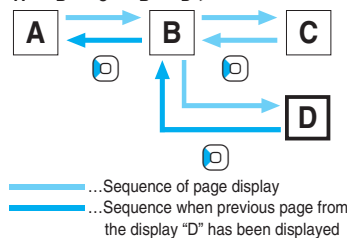
Currently displayed page



## To turn pages

You can move back up through the pages that you have displayed so far by pressing  repeatedly. However, if you display a different page ("D") from the previous page ("B"), you cannot return to "C" from "D" even when you press  twice. Instead, the pages are displayed in the order of "D" → "B" → "A".

<When pages have been displayed in the order of "A" → "B" → "C" → "B" → "D">








### Information

- When you display a page stored in cache, you cannot display text or settings you entered when connected before.
- When Flash movies are displayed, the site behavior might differ from the one for ordinary sites.

## Select/Enter Information on Sites

In sites, you may use the displayed radio buttons, check boxes, text boxes, and pull down menus.

Name	Display example	Operation/Explanation
Radio button	<input type="radio"/> : Not selected <input checked="" type="radio"/> : Selected	Radio buttons are for selecting one from multiple choices.
Check box	<input type="checkbox"/> : Not selected <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> : Selected	Check boxes are for selecting one or more items from multiple choices.

Name	Display example	Operation/Explanation
Text box		You can enter characters. Highlight a text box and press  ( <b>Select</b> ) to show the Character Entry display.
Pull down menu		You can select an item from the option list. Highlight a pull-down menu and press  ( <b>Select</b> ) to show the option list. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You might be able to select multiple items from pull-down menus. Each time you use  to highlight an item and press  (<b>Select</b>), you can select/release items repeatedly. After selecting items, press  (<b>Finish</b>).</li> </ul>

### Information

- Depending on the site, the display authenticating your user ID or password might appear.  
Enter your user ID and password, and then select "OK".

## Flash Function



Flash is an animation technology using pictures and sound. Flash movies make the sites more attractive. You can download Flash movies to your FOMA phone and play them back or set them for the Stand-by display.

### Information

- The maximum display size of the Flash movies on the site is 700 x 480 dots. If a Flash movie is larger than 700 x 480 dots, it is displayed shrunk with a proportional ratio retained.
- Some Flash movies refer to the phone-information data in your FOMA phone. To permit the use of the information in your FOMA phone, set "Use phone information" to "YES". ("YES" is set at purchase.)



## Information


- Effect tones sound for some Flash movies. To silence them, set "Sound effect setting" (or "Sound effect") to "OFF".
- The effect tone and vibrator for the Flash movie set for the Stand-by display do not work.
- The effect tone for Flash movies does not sound during Play Background.
- Some Flash movies may vibrate the FOMA phone while they are being played back. The FOMA phone vibrates regardless of the setting of "Vibrator".
- When you play back a Flash movie after saving to Data Box, microSD card, or Screen Memo, it might look different depending on the saving location.
- Some Flash movies might not work correctly.
- You cannot save the Flash movies if an error occurs while they are being played back.
- You can operate some Flash movies by using  or . Flash movies can be operated sometimes even when "⏏" is not displayed.
- When Flash movies are displayed, the behavior might differ from ordinary sites.

## Serial Number of Mobile Phones/UIMs

When you select an item, the confirmation display might appear asking whether to send the serial number of mobile phone/UIM.

- The "serial number of your mobile phone/UIM" to be sent is used by an identifying the user, providing customized information, and for judging if the contents the IP (Information Provider) offers are available on your mobile phone.
- The "serial number of your mobile phone/UIM" is sent to the IPs (Information Providers) over the Internet, so could be deciphered by third parties. However, your phone number, address, age, and gender are not notified to the IPs (Information Providers) or others, by this operation.

## Function Menu while Site is Displayed

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
 Menu	You can return to "⏏ Menu".
<b>Bookmark</b> (Add bookmark)	See page 178.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Bookmark</b> (Bookmark)	▶ <b>Bookmark</b> Go to step 1 on page 179.
<b>Screen memo</b> (Add screen memo)	See page 180.
<b>Screen memo</b> (Screen memo list)	▶ <b>Screen memo list</b> Go to step 2 on page 181.
<b>Internet</b> (Enter URL)	You can enter a URL to display an Internet web page. ▶ <b>Enter URL</b> ▶ <b>Select the text box.</b> Go to step 2 on page 178. • The URL of the displayed site is input beforehand.
<b>Internet</b> (Switch to FB)	See page 316.
<b>Reload</b>	The site contents will be updated with the latest information.
<b>Save image</b>	See page 182.
<b>Compose message</b>	You can compose an i-mode mail message with the URL/image of a displayed site/screen memo pasted or attached. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>Attach URL</b> . . . . . Pastes a URL to the text of an i-mode mail message. <b>Attach image</b> . . . . . Select an image to attach it to an i-mode mail message. <b>Insert dec. mail</b> . . . . Select an image to paste it to a Deco-mail message. Go to step 2 on page 198. • See page 202 for Deco-mail.
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	See page 96.
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	See page 127.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Others</b> (Change CHR code)	When characters are not correctly displayed, you can convert them to the correct ones. ▶ <b>Change CHR code</b> ● This setting is valid only for the site and Internet web page being displayed.
<b>Others</b> (Title)	You can display the title of the displayed site. ▶ <b>Title</b>
<b>Others</b> (URL)	You can display the URL of the displayed site. ▶ <b>URL</b>
<b>Others</b> (Certificate)	You can check the subject name, author, validity period and serial number of the certificate used in SSL communication. Up to five certificates are displayed. ▶ <b>Certificate</b>
<b>Others</b> (Set image display)	See page 188.
<b>Others</b> (Sound effect)	See page 188.
<b>Others</b> (Retry)	You can play back the animation or Flash movie from the beginning. ▶ <b>Retry</b> ● When a part of the Flash movie is outside the display area, the Flash movie might not be played back.

### Information

#### <Compose message>

- The number of characters of the URL you can paste to the text is up to 256 half-pitch characters. If the URL contains 256 half-pitch characters or more, you cannot paste it.
- You may not be able to attach or paste some images to i-mode mail.

#### <Others (Change CHR code)>

- When characters are not correctly displayed, repeat the operation. However, the previous character is displayed if you repeat the operation four times.
- Even when you repeat this operation, the correct character might not appear.
- If you change the character code when the correct characters are displayed, wrong characters might appear instead.

### Information

#### <Others (Title)>

- Up to 128 half-pitch/64 full-pitch characters can be displayed for a title.

#### <Last URL>

## Displaying Most Recently Accessed Site

### Display Last URL

When you end i-mode, the URL of the page displayed last is stored as "Last URL".


You can display the page you viewed last time by selecting "Last URL" from the i-mode menu.

1  ▶ Last URL

### Information

- Some pages cannot be stored as "Last URL", such as pages whose URLs contain more than 2,048 half-pitch characters, the Obtaining Completion display for melodies or i-motion movies, etc. and FirstPass Center pages.

### Reset Last URL

You can initialize the URL of the page you viewed last time to the  Menu URL.

1  ▶ i-mode settings ▶ Reset last URL ▶ YES

## Using My Menu

If you register frequently used sites in My Menu, you will be able to access them easily.

You can register up to 45 sites.

### Register Sites in My Menu

#### 1 Bring up a page to be registered ▶ Register My Menu

- The page configuration differs depending on the site.

#### 2 Select the i-mode password text box

##### ▶ Enter the i-mode password ▶ 決定 (OK)

- The entered i-mode password is displayed as “\*”.
- See page 132 for the i-mode password.

#### Information

- Some sites cannot be registered in My Menu.
- When you subscribe to a pay site in ヌ二ユ一 / 検索(Menu/Search) and Menu list, it will be registered in My Menu automatically.

### Access Sites from My Menu

#### 1 ▶ Menu ▶ English iMenu ▶ My Menu

##### ▶ Select a site to be accessed.

#### Information

- If you are using Dual Network Service, you might not be able to use My Menu registered by the mova phone using the FOMA phone, or My Menu registered by the FOMA phone using the mova phone.

## Changing i-mode Password

The i-mode password (four digits) is required to subscribe to and unsubscribe from message services and i-mode pay sites, and to do i-mode mail settings.

Be sure not to let others know your i-mode password.

#### 1 ▶ Menu ▶ English iMenu ▶ Options

##### ▶ Change i-mode Password

##### ▶ Select the “Current Password” text box

##### ▶ Enter the i-mode password (four digits).

- If you enter the i-mode password for the first time, enter “0000” (four zeros) which is set at a time of your contract.
- The entered numeral is displayed as “\*”.

#### 2 Select the “New Password” text box

##### ▶ Enter a new i-mode password (four digits).

- Enter your own i-mode password.

#### 3 Select the “New Password (Confirmation)” text box

##### ▶ Enter the new i-mode password (four digits) ▶ Select

- Enter the same number that you entered in step 2.

#### Information

- Note that if you do not remember the i-mode password, you need to bring an identification card such as your driver's license to the handling counter of a DoCoMo shop.

<Enter URL>

## Displaying Internet Web Pages

1  ▶ Go to location ▶ <NEW>

2 Enter a URL ▶ OK

- You can enter up to 256 half-pitch alphanumeric characters and symbols (up to 512 half-pitch characters for Full Browser).
- For Full Browser, the confirmation display appears telling that the web page might not be displayed.

### Information

- For i-mode, Internet web pages not supporting i-mode or some type of internet web pages to be connected might not be displayed correctly.
- When the file size of the page you have received exceeds the maximum obtainable size of a page, receiving is suspended. The data obtained so far might be displayable by selecting "OK".

## Displaying Web Pages from URL History

Up to 10 entered URLs can be stored in URL History.

1  ▶ Go to location  
▶ Select a URL to be displayed ▶ OK





- Excluding "http://" and "https://", up to 22 half-pitch characters can be displayed.
- You can edit the URL by selecting the URL's text box.



### Information

- When the entered URLs exceed 10 items, the URL histories are overwritten automatically, starting from the oldest one.
- When you newly enter a URL to access a site, that URL is saved as a different record even if you access the same URL.

## Function Menu of the URL History List



Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Compose message</b>	You can compose an i-mode mail message with the highlighted URL pasted to the text. Go to step 2 on page 198. • You can compose it also by pressing   .
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	See page 127.
<b>Set as home URL</b>	You can store the site as Home URL of Full Browser. ▶ YES • You can operate this only from the URL History list of Full Browser.
<b>Delete</b> [Delete (Delete this)]	▶ Delete (Delete this) ▶ YES
<b>Delete</b> (Delete selected)	▶ Delete selected ▶ Put a check mark for URL histories to be deleted   ▶ YES
<b>Delete</b> (Delete all)	▶ Delete all ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

<Bookmark>

## Bookmarking Web Pages or Sites for Quick Access

### Add Bookmark

Once you bookmark a frequently accessed site, you can display the page directly. You can register 100 bookmarks each for i-mode and Full Browser.

1 From the page to be registered    
▶ Bookmark ▶ Add bookmark ▶ YES  
▶ Select a destination folder.

## Information

- URLs containing up to 256 half-pitch characters can be registered (up to 512 half-pitch characters for Full Browser). URLs longer than this cannot be registered.
- Up to 12 full-pitch/24 half-pitch characters are stored for a title. For longer titles, the excess characters are deleted. If no title is entered, the URL without "http://" or "https://" is registered.
- The contents entered in the site are not saved to the bookmark.
- Some pages cannot be bookmarked.

## Display Web Pages or Sites from a Bookmark




- 1  **Bookmark** ▶ Select a folder  
▶ Select a bookmark to be displayed.

- After you use a bookmark to display a page, that bookmark will be displayed at the top of the Bookmark list.












## Function Menu of the Bookmark Folder List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Operate folder (Add folder)</b>	You can add a new folder. You can add up to nine folders in addition to each "Bookmark" folder/"Screen memo" folder. ▶ <b>Add folder</b> ▶ Enter a folder name. • You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.
<b>Operate folder (Edit folder name)</b>	▶ <b>Edit folder name</b> ▶ Edit the folder name. • You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.
<b>Operate folder (Delete folder)</b>	You can delete the folder and all bookmarks and screen memos in the folder. You cannot delete the "Bookmark" folder/"Screen memo" folder. ▶ <b>Delete folder</b> ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>lr/  transmission (Send all lr data)</b>	See page 371.
<b>lr/  transmission (All  transmission)</b>	See page 372.
<b>No. of bookmarks</b>	You can check the number of bookmarks stored in all folders.
<b>Delete all</b>	The folders will not be deleted. ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

## Function Menu of the Bookmark List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Compose message</b>	You can compose an i-mode mail message with the highlighted URL pasted to the text. Go to step 2 on page 198. • You can compose it also by pressing   .
<b>Attach to mail</b>	You can send an i-mode mail message with the bookmark attached. Go to step 2 on page 198.
<b>Move</b>	You can move bookmarks or screen memos to another folder. ▶ <b>Select a destination folder</b> ▶ <b>Put a check mark for bookmarks or screen memos to be moved</b> ▶  <b>(Finish)</b> ▶ YES
<b>Edit title</b>	▶ <b>Edit the title.</b> • You can edit the title also by pressing   from the list. • You can enter up to 12 full-pitch/24 half-pitch characters for a bookmark. If you press  (  ) with a blank, the URL without "http://" or "https://" is registered. • You can enter up to 11 full-pitch/22 half-pitch characters for a screen memo. If you press  (  ) with a blank, the screen memo is registered as "No title".

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Copy (Copy URL)	You can copy the URL of the bookmark. ▶ Select a start point for copying ▶ Select an end point for copying. ● See page 442 for how to paste copied characters.
Copy (Copy to microSD)	See page 357.
Set as home URL	You can store the site as Home URL of Full Browser. ▶ YES ● You can operate this only from the Bookmark list of Full Browser.
Add desktop icon	See page 127.
Ir/ transmission (Send Ir data)	See page 370.
Ir/ transmission ( transmission)	See page 372.
No. of bookmarks	You can display the number of bookmarks stored in the displayed folder.
Delete [Delete (Delete this)]	▶ Delete (Delete this) ▶ YES
Delete (Delete selected)	▶ Delete selected ▶ Put a check mark for bookmarks or screen memos to be deleted ▶ (Finish) ▶ YES
Delete (Delete all)	You can delete all bookmarks or screen memos stored in the folder. ▶ Delete all ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

&lt;Screen Memo&gt;

## Saving Site Contents

### Save as a Screen Memo

You can save a displayed page as a screen memo to the FOMA phone. You can display the page saved as a screen memo without connecting to i-mode.

You can save up to 100 screen memos, however, the number of screen memos you can save decreases depending on the data volume.

1 From a page to be saved ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Screen memo  
▶ Add screen memo ▶ YES ▶ Select a destination folder.

- See page 186 when screen memos are stored to the maximum.

### Information

- Up to 11 full-pitch/22 half-pitch characters are stored for a title. For longer titles, the excess characters are deleted.
- If you save the Obtaining Completion display, its data file is saved as well. (The Obtaining Completion display for Chaku-uta Full® music files, for i-motion movies with playable deadline, or for the ToruCa files whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited cannot be saved.) Some Obtaining Completion displays cannot be saved as screen memos. The display except the Obtaining Completion display is saved with a URL of that page of up to 256 half-pitch characters.
- When you save SSL pages, their SSL certificates are saved as well.
- The contents entered in the text box, or selected with the pull-down menu, check box, or radio button are not saved to screen memos.
- You can save up to 100 Kbytes per page. However, you can save up to 500 Kbytes of the i-motion Obtaining Completion display, up to 200 Kbytes of the Deco-mail Template Obtaining Completion display, up to 100 Kbytes of the Decome-Anime Template Obtaining Completion display, up to 1 Kbyte of the ToruCa Obtaining Completion display, and up to 20 Kbytes of the Download Dictionary Obtaining Completion display.

## Display a Screen Memo

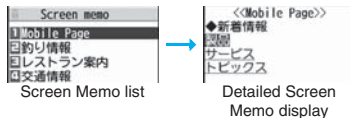
### 1 Screen memo



Screen Memo Folder list

### 2 Select a folder ▶ Select a screen memo.

- Use  to check other screen memos.




Screen Memo list

Detailed Screen Memo display

#### Information


- The page saved as a screen memo has the information at the time it was saved. This might differ from the latest information on the site.

### Function Menu of the Screen Memo Folder List



Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Operate folder (Add folder)	See page 179.
Operate folder (Edit folder name)	See page 179.
Operate folder (Delete folder)	See page 179.
Security ON/OFF	You can set the folder to open only when you enter your Terminal Security Code. ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES The folder changes to "  ". • To release it, perform the same operation.
No. of memos	You can display the number of stored screen memos and protected screen memos in all folders.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Delete all	You can delete all screen memos. The folders will not be deleted. ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

### Function Menu of the Screen Memo List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Move	See page 179.
Edit title	See page 179.
Protect ON/OFF	You can protect screen memos not to be deleted. You can protect up to 50 screen memos, however, the number of screen memos you can protect decreases depending on the data volume. Protected items are indicated by "  ". • To release protection, perform the same operation.
No. of memos	You can display the number of stored screen memos and protected screen memos in the displayed folder.
Delete (Delete)	See page 180.
Delete (Delete selected)	See page 180.
Delete (Delete all)	See page 180.

### Function Menu of the Detailed Screen Memo Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Compose message	You can compose an i-mode mail message also by pressing  (  ). (See page 175)
Edit title	See page 179.
Protect ON/OFF	See page 181.
Save image	See page 182.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Add to phonebook	See page 96.
Others (URL)	You can display the URL of the screen memo. ▶ URL
Others (Certificate)	See page 176.
Others (Sound effect)	See page 188.
Others (Retry)	You can play back the animation or Flash movie from the beginning. ▶ Retry • When a part of the Flash movie is outside the display area, the Flash movie might not be played back.
Delete	▶ YES

## Downloading Files or Data Items from Sites

You can download the files such as images and melodies from sites and save them to the FOMA phone. You can save some files directly to the microSD card.

### Download Image

You can save the image displayed on a site or screen memo, and then set it as the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, or another display. You can save images, frames and marks for Deco-mail as well. You can save up to 3,500 files in total sharing the memory space with other data files, however, the number of files you can save decreases depending on the data volume. (See page 537)

#### 1 From a site display/Detailed Screen Memo display

- ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Save image
- ▶ Save image or Save BG image

- When you save an image, select it.

#### 2 YES ▶ Select a destination folder.

- See page 186 when images are stored to the maximum.

#### 3 To set it as a display, select “YES”.

- Go to “Set display” on page 331.

#### Information

- Up to 36 half-pitch characters are saved for a file name.  
When the file name is not specified, a part of the downloaded URL or “imagexxx” (xxx denotes numerals) is saved as the file name.
- Even when an image is displayed on the site, it might not be displayed on the Picture viewer after saving it to the FOMA phone.
- The image satisfying the following conditions is saved as a Deco-mail pictogram:
  - GIF or JPEG image
  - Image of 20 x 20 dots
  - Image without file restrictions
  - Image of 6 Kbytes or less
- The image satisfying the following conditions is saved as a frame or a mark:
  - Transparent GIF (except animation GIF)
  - The extension is “ifm”.
  - Image of Stand-by (480 x 854) or smaller
  - Images of Stand-by (480 x 854), VGA (640 x 480), CIF (352 x 288), QVGA (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), and Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) are saved as frames, and others are saved as marks.
- You can save up to 100 Kbytes per image via i-mode, or 500 Kbytes per image via Full Browser.
- For Full Browser, you cannot save some images. You can save images in BMP format and PNG format only to the microSD card.



## Download Melody

You can download melodies and set them as a ring tone and other tones. You can save up to 3,500 files in total sharing the memory space with other data files, however, the number of files you can save decreases depending on the data volume. (See page 537)

### 1 Bring up a melody downloadable site

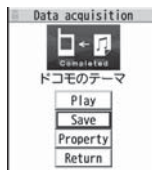
- ▶ Select a melody ▶ Save ▶ YES
- ▶ Select a destination folder.

- See page 352 for operations while a melody is being played back.
- Select "Property" to display the melody information. (See page 352)
- See page 186 when melodies are stored to the maximum.
- See page 180 to save a screen memo.

### 2 Select "YES" to set the downloaded melody as a ring tone ▶ Select an incoming type.

#### Information

- For some melodies, the play part might have been specified. If you set the play-part-specified melody for a ring tone, it is played back according to the setting of "Position to play" of "Melody effect".
- Some downloaded melodies might not be played back successfully.
- Up to 36 half-pitch characters are saved for a file name.  
When the file name is not specified, a part of the downloaded URL or "melodyxxx" (xxx denotes numerals) is saved as the file name.
- Untitled melodies are indicated by "No title" on the Obtaining Completion display or list.
- You can save up to 100 Kbytes per melody.



Obtaining Completion display

## Download PDF File

You can download PDF files from sites for display. You can save up to 3,500 files in total sharing the memory space with other data files, however, the number of files you can save decreases depending on the data volume. (See page 537)

### 1 Bring up a PDF file downloadable site ▶ Select a PDF file.

- With the PDF file that cannot be displayed unless you download all pages, the confirmation display appears asking whether to download all pages. Select "YES" to select the destination folder.
- If you have not downloaded all pages, you can additionally download the remaining pages by using "Download remain".
- See page 377 for how to save the displayed PDF file to the FOMA phone. You can save the PDF file containing pages that have not been downloaded or the PDF file of which download was suspended midway as well.
- The password entry display might be displayed depending on the PDF file. Enter the password, and then select "OK".
- See page 374 for operations while PDF file is displayed.

#### Information

- The file size of the PDF file you can download from i-mode sites is up to 2 Mbytes. You cannot download the PDF file in excess of 2 Mbytes.
- You might be able to display the failed-to-download PDF file by re-downloading.

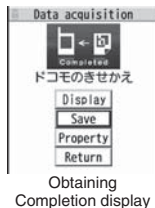
## Download Kisekae Tool File

You can download Kisekae Tool files from the site to change the ring tone, Stand-by display, icons, and others at a time. You can save up to 3,500 files in total sharing the memory space with other data files, however, the number of files you can save decreases depending on the data volume. (See page 537)

- You can download the pre-installed Kisekae Tool file from the "P-SQUARE" site.  
(See page 186)

### 1 Bring up a Kisekae Tool downloadable site ▶ Select a Kisekae Tool file ▶ Save ▶ YES ▶ Phone or microSD

- When you save a Kisekae Tool file to your FOMA phone, the confirmation display appears asking whether to set the Kisekae Tool file at a time.
- Select "Property" to display the Kisekae Tool information. (See page 354)
- See page 186 when Kisekae Tool files are stored to the maximum.
- See page 180 to save a screen memo.



### When downloading Kisekae Tool file is suspended

When you press (Quit) to suspend downloading or when downloading is suspended by an incoming call, the confirmation display appears asking whether to resume downloading.

Select "YES" to resume downloading the remaining part. Select "NO" to show the Obtaining Completion display. When you select "Save pt.", select "Phone" or "microSD" to save.

You can re-download the rest of the partially saved file from "Kisekae Tool" in "Data box".

### Information

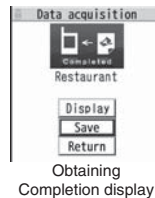
- You can save up to 2,078 Kbytes per Kisekae Tool file.

## Download ToruCa File

You can download ToruCa files from sites. You can save up to 495 files, however, the number of files you can save decreases depending on the data volume because the memory space is shared with other data files. (See page 537)

### 1 Bring up a ToruCa file downloadable site ▶ Select a ToruCa file ▶ Save ▶ YES ▶ Select a destination folder.

- Select "Display" to preview the ToruCa file. You can save the ToruCa file also by pressing (Save) while it is previewed.
- See page 186 when ToruCa files are stored to the maximum.
- Press (FUNC) and select "Add screen memo" to save the display as a screen memo. (See page 180)



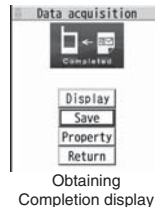
## Download Template (Deco-mail)

You can download templates for Deco-mail from sites. You can save up to 100 templates including the pre-installed ones, however, the number of templates you can save decreases depending on the data volume.

- You can download the pre-installed templates from the "P-SQUARE" site.  
(See page 186)

### 1 Bring up a template downloadable site ▶ Select a template ▶ Save ▶ YES

- Select "Property" to display the information about the template. (See page 208)
- See page 208 for how to check the stored template.
- See page 186 when templates are stored to the maximum.
- See page 180 to save a screen memo.



## Information

- When no decoration is set for the template, you cannot save it.
- When a file is attached to the template, that file is deleted.
- When the image whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited is inserted, the inserted image is deleted when saving. When the inserted image is deleted and thus no decoration is found, you cannot save the template.
- The title of the downloaded template takes the name of "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm". (Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute)
- You can download up to 200 Kbytes per template file, but when the number of characters used for the mail text exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters or 10,000 half-pitch characters, or when the total of the image size inserted exceeds 90 Kbytes, you cannot save that template file.

## Download Template (Decome-Anime)

You can download templates for Decome-Anime from sites.

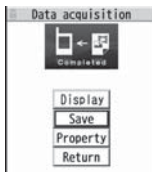
You can save up to 100 templates including the pre-installed ones, however, the number of templates you can save decreases depending on the data volume.

- You can download the pre-installed templates from the "P-SQUARE" site. (See page 186)

### 1 Bring up a template downloadable site

- ▶ Select a template ▶ Save ▶ YES
- ▶ Phone or microSD

- Select "Property" to display the information about the template. (See page 210)
- See page 209 for how to check the stored template.
- See page 186 when templates are stored to the maximum.
- See page 180 to save a screen memo.



Obtaining  
Completion display

### 2 Select "YES" to compose Decome-Anime.

Go to step 2 on page 206.

## Information

- You can save up to 100 Kbytes per template file.

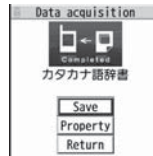
## Download Dictionary

You can download dictionaries from sites. You can save up to 10 dictionaries including the pre-installed ones.

- You can download the pre-installed dictionaries from the "P-SQUARE" site. (See page 186)

### 1 Bring up a dictionary downloadable site ▶ Select a dictionary ▶ Save ▶ YES

- Select "Property" to display the information about the dictionary. (See page 443)
- See page 180 to save a screen memo.



Obtaining  
Completion display

### 2 <Not stored> ▶ To set it as a dictionary file, select "YES".

- See page 443 for how to operate the downloaded dictionary.

## Information

- You can save up to 20 Kbytes per dictionary.
- Depending on the site, you might not be able to download dictionaries.

## Download Chara-den Images

You can download Chara-den images from sites. You can save up to three Chara-den images including the pre-installed ones.

- You can download the pre-installed chara-den images from the "P-SQUARE" site. (See page 186)

### 1 Bring up a Chara-den image downloadable site

- ▶ Select a Chara-den image ▶ Save
- ▶ YES

- Select "Property" to display the information about the Chara-den image. (See page 349)
- See page 186 when Chara-den images are stored to the maximum.
- See page 180 to save a screen memo.



Obtaining  
Completion display

**Information**

- You can save up to 100 Kbytes per Chara-den image.

**Search by i-mode**

You can look for your favorite files on the site and download them. The number of files you can save differs depending on the files you download. You cannot change the site.

## 1 Each selection display ▶ Search by i-mode ▶ YES ▶ Select a file.

- The way of downloading differs depending on the file.

**Information**

- You are separately charged a packet communication fee.

**When the data files are stored to the maximum**

If the maximum number of data files is stored or there is not enough memory when you try to save the data files, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the unnecessary file and save new one.







• Perform this operation to save the following data:

- Images
- i-motion movies
- Melodies
- Chara-den images
- Programs
- Chaku-uta Full® music files
- PDF files
- i-oppli programs
- ToruCa files
- Templates
- Screen memos
- Kisekae Tool files

1. YES ▶ Put a check mark for data files to be deleted ▶  (Finish) ▶ YES

As the data files except Chara-den images, templates, and screen memos are stored in the same storage area, you can select other files when deleting files. Select a folder and put a check mark for the files to be deleted. "\*" appears on the folder which contains the checked files.


"Finish" appears when you put it for the files whose amount of data is equal to memory shortage.

- You can put or clear check marks at a time by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Select all in page/Release in page".
- Each time you press  or  (Memory), or each time you press  (FUNC) and select "Change disp. mode", you can switch display/nondisplay of the folder volume and data volume.
- When selecting a file in "MUSIC", you can show the lower level folders by pressing  (→).
- Each time you press , the upper level folder returns.

- For programs, you need to delete many files when deleting other files because the data volume per program is large.
- If the maximum number of programs are stored when you execute "Move program" or try to save an i-oppli program or ToruCa file, you need to delete at least one file which belongs to the same type.
- If there is a security-applied folder for screen memos, the confirmation display appears asking whether to enable you to select screen memos in that security-applied folder. When you select "YES", you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.
- The file set for another function is indicated by "\*".
- See page 254 for deleting mail-linked i-oppli.
- If you operate this when moving an i-oppli program from the microSD card to the FOMA phone, you cannot delete the i-oppli program with its data file on the IC card.

**About "P-SQUARE"**

You can download the pre-installed Kisekae Tool file, templates, dictionaries, Chara-den images, and Deco-mail pictograms from the "P-SQUARE" site (Japanese only).

 Menu → メニュー／検索 (Menu/Search) → ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile Phone Maker) → P-SQUARE



QR code for accessing the site

**Uploading Files to Sites**

You can upload JPEG or GIF images and i-motion movies stored in the FOMA phone to a site.

## 1 Bring up a file uploadable site ▶ 参照 (Reference) ▶ Picture or motion ▶ Select a file to be uploaded.

- Procedure for uploading files differs depending on the site.

**Information**

- You can upload up to 2 Mbytes in total.
- You cannot upload files that are prohibited from output from the FOMA phone to other devices.

## Operations from Highlighted Information

You can easily make a call, send mail, display Internet web pages, start 1Seg, book programs, and set timer recordings using highlighted information (phone numbers, mail addresses, URLs, melodies, images, and so on) displayed on sites and in mail.

- The Web To, Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, i-ϕpli To, Media To and Address Link functions might not be available depending on the mail sent from a personal computer or the site.
- You might be able to use the Web To, Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, or i-ϕpli To function using highlighted information other than a phone number, mail address or URL.
- In B Mode of 2in1, the Mail To function is not available.
- The information is not highlighted in the Decome-Anime.

## Phone To/AV Phone To Function

You can make voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls by using phone numbers or similar information displayed on sites and in mail.

- The Phone To function to make a videophone call is called the AV Phone To function.

### 1 Select a phone number or similar information ▶ Select a dialing type.

- When you select "Select image", select an image to be sent to other party during a videophone call.
- Select "SMS" to compose an SMS message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 244.
- The choices for dialing types may not be displayed when the phone number is prefixed by "tel:" or "tel-av:". Go to step 2.

### 2 Dial

- To make an international call, select "Int'l dial assist". (See page 61)
- To set Caller ID Notification, select "Notify caller ID". (See step 2 on page 48)

#### Information

- You cannot make a call in Horizontal Open Style.

## Mail To Function

You can send mail by using mail addresses or similar information displayed on sites and in mail.


### 1 Select a mail address or similar information.

- The destination mail address is already entered in the address field. Go to step 3 on page 198.

## Web To Function

You can access Internet web pages, via i-mode or Full Browser, from URL or similar information displayed on sites or in mail.

### 1 Select a URL or similar information ▶ i-mode or Full Browser ▶ YES

- When the URL or similar one contains the information of i-mode or Full Browser, you are connected via the function which corresponds to the information.
- To cancel during connection, select "Cancel". To cancel while obtaining a page, press  (Quit).

## i-ϕpli To Function

You can start i-ϕpli programs from URLs (links) displayed on sites and in mail.

### 1 Select i-ϕpli information ▶ YES i-ϕpli starts.

#### Information


- Even if i-mode mail text contains a link to start an i-ϕpli program, you cannot quote the link when forwarding or replying to. Also, you cannot quote it when using DoCoMo keitai datalink or infrared data exchange function.

## Media To Function

You can start 1Seg, book programs, or set timer recordings from the information (links) displayed on sites and in mail.

### 1 Select 1Seg information ▶ YES

1Seg or the program booking/timer recording starts.

- When the program booking/timer recording function starts, press  (Finish) to book a program or set timer recording.

To change contents you want to book/set, go to step 1 of "Book Program List" on page 304 or step 1 of "Timer Recording List" on page 305.

### Information

- You may not be able to use the Media To function even if information is highlighted.

## Address Link Function

You can bring up a map from the postal address shown in a site or others or can use the location information on the GPS compatible i-ϕpli program. You can send the location information by i-mode mail as well.

### 1 Select the location information such as postal address ▶ Select an item.

**Run**  ϕpli . . . . . Selects and starts a GPS compatible i-ϕpli program.

**Read a map** . . . . . Connects to the map site and displays a map.

**Paste to mail** . . . . . Converts the location information into a URL and composes an i-mode mail message with the URL pasted to the text.



**Location info (Check loc. info)**

. . . . . Displays the details of the selected location information.

## <i-mode Settings>



## Setting i-mode

### 1 ▶ i-mode settings ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Scroll</b>	You can set the number of lines that are scrolled for when you use  while displaying a site or screen memo. ▶ <b>Select the number of lines.</b>
<b>Character size</b>	See "i-mode" on page 129.
<b>Set image display</b>	You can set whether to display images or Flash movies included on sites or in screen memos. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Set connection timeout</b>	See page 189.
<b>Host selection</b>	See page 189.
 <b>motion auto-play</b>	See page 194.
<b>Use phone information</b>	To display a Flash movie while a site or screen memo is displayed, the information in the FOMA phone may be used. You can select whether to permit the information to be used for that case. ▶ <b>YES or NO</b>
<b>Sound effect setting</b>	You can set whether to make an effect tone sound for when you display a Flash movie while a site or screen memo is displayed. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Doc. display settings</b>	See page 377.
<b>i-mode arrival act</b>	See page 89.
<b>Check settings</b>	You can check each of "i-mode settings".
<b>Reset last URL</b>	See page 176.

### Information

#### <Set image display>

- Even when "ON" is set, images might not be displayed correctly. In this case,  is displayed.
- When "OFF" is set,  is displayed and the data file is not received.
- If you change this setting, "Set image display" of "User settings" of "1Seg" is also changed.

#### <Use phone information>

- The available information is as follows:
  - Date and time set by "Set time"
  - Reception level of radio waves
  - Battery level
  - Sound volume set by "Phone" of "Ring volume"
  - Language selected by "Select language"
  - Model name and serial number of FOMA phone

#### <Sound effect setting>

- Even when "ON" is set, the effect tones may not sound depending on Flash movies.

### <Set Connection Timeout>

## Setting Connection Timeout

It may take long to obtain some sites. You can set the time to wait before canceling obtaining. Obtaining is not canceled automatically when "Unlimited" is set.

-  **i-mode settings** ▶ **Set connection timeout**  
▶ Select a timeout.

### Information

- Even when you have set "Unlimited", you may be disconnected owing to radio wave conditions.

### <Host Selection>

MENU 8 1


## Changing a Host from i-mode (ISP Connection Communication)

※Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

You can set the host (APN) to use for receiving services other than i-mode (DoCoMo).

If you change this setting, you will not be able to use i-mode.

-  **i-mode settings** ▶ **Host selection**  
▶ Highlight <Not recorded> and press  (**Edit**)  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.

- If you select a stored host, the setting is changed to the selected one.
- To delete the stored host, press  (**FUNC**), select "Delete", enter your Terminal Security Code, and then select "YES".

- Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Host name	▶ Enter a host name. • You can enter up to 9 full-pitch/18 half-pitch characters.
Host number	▶ Enter a host number. • You can enter up to 99 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
Host address	▶ Enter a host address. • You can enter up to 30 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
Host address 2	▶ Enter a host address 2. • You can enter up to 30 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.


- Press  (**Finish**).





## Information

- If you set any other host than i-mode, "Pake-Houdai" or "Pake-Houdai Full" are not applied.

## <SSL Certificate>

# Operating SSL Certificates

- 1  ▶ Operate certificate ▶ Certificate  
▶ Highlight a certificate and press  (FUNC)  
▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Certificate info</b>	The subject name, author, validity period, and serial number of the certificate are displayed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You can check the certificate also by pressing  (Select) instead of  (FUNC).</li></ul>
<b>Valid/Invalid</b>	The selected item is invalidated; then "  " changes to "  ". <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When you select an invalid certificate, it will be validated.</li><li>• If you set a certificate to invalid, you cannot display the sites with that SSL certificate.</li><li>• You cannot set "DoCoMo Cert 2" to "Invalid".</li></ul>

## Certificates used for SSL communication

Certificate . . . . .	Certificates issued by the authenticating company and stored in the FOMA phone at purchase.
DoCoMo Certificate . . .	Certificates required for connecting to the FirstPass Center or FirstPass sites; they are stored on the UIM (green/white).
User Certificate . . . . .	Certificates downloaded from the FirstPass Center by selecting "Client certificate" from the i-mode menu; they are stored on the UIM (green/white).

## <Client Certificate>

# Setting FirstPass

User certificates verify that you have subscribed to the FOMA service. Downloaded user certificates are stored on the UIM for the use on FirstPass sites.

When you cannot display a FirstPass site because the user certificate on the UIM has expired or the required user certificate is not stored on the UIM, you can request the issue and download the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.

- You can request and download user certificates from the FirstPass Center.
- This function is not available with the blue UIM.
- The display and operating method displayed in the FirstPass Center site are subject to change.
- To show FirstPass sites, you can use Full Browser as well.
- You cannot send/receive mail or receive Messages R/V while connected to the FirstPass Center.
- Set the date and time using "Set time" beforehand to connect to the FirstPass Center.
- This function is not available overseas.

## Client Authentication

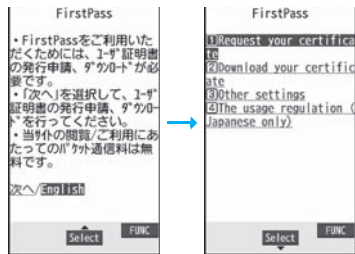
- With the FOMA phone, server authentication and client authentication are performed for safer data exchange. The site and your FOMA phone exchange certificates, check the other party's certificate and verify each other for safer communication service. By getting client authentication, you can enjoy more secure communication services.
- Client authentication is available via the Internet communication from the FOMA phone or via the Internet communication with the FOMA phone connected to a personal computer. To use the personal computer for the client authentication, you need to install the FirstPass PC software from the provided CD-ROM. For details, refer to "FirstPassManual (PDF format)" in the "FirstPassPCsoft" folder on the CD-ROM. Adobe® Reader® (version 6.0 or higher is recommended) is required to see "FirstPassManual (PDF format)". If it is not installed in your personal computer, install Adobe® Reader® from the provided CD-ROM to see it. For details such as how to use it, refer to "Adobe Reader Help".



## Access FirstPass Center

You can perform user certificate operations on the site of the FirstPass Center site.

### 1 Operate certificate ▶ Client certificate ▶ English



Site display for the FirstPass Center

#### Information

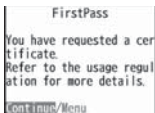
- Before using the FirstPass Center, select "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" and carefully read the regulation.
- You are not charged a packet communication fee for connecting to the FirstPass Center.

## Request Issue of User Certificate for Download

You need to request the issue of the user certificate before you download it. When requesting the issue of your user certificate is completed, it is saved on the UIM and the FirstPass sites will be displayable.

### 1 Site display for the FirstPass Center ▶ Request your certificate ▶ Continue

- For an update, the message "Updating user certificate" is displayed.
- When you have already requested the issue of the user certificate, select "Download" from the site display for the FirstPass Center, go to step 3.



### 2 Enter your PIN2 code.

- Enter your PIN2 code within 60 seconds. When the code is not entered within 60 seconds, the connection is cut off as an error entry.
- See page 132 for PIN2 code.



### 3 Download ▶ Continue

- If you do not download the user certificate immediately, select "Menu". From the confirmation display asking whether to close the SSL page, select "YES" to return to the site display for the FirstPass Center.

#### Information

- Before downloading a new or an updated certificate, be sure to request the user certificate to be issued. User certificates cannot be downloaded until the request for issue has been made.

## Access Sites with User Certificate

You can connect to FirstPass sites with your user certificate.

### 1 Bring up a FirstPass site ▶ Select an item ▶ YES

### 2 Enter your PIN2 code.

- Enter your PIN2 code within 60 seconds. When the code is not entered within 60 seconds, the connection is cut off as an error entry.
- See page 132 for PIN2 code.

#### Information

- If you try to connect to the FirstPass site without the user certificate or when its available period is expired, the confirmation display appears asking whether to continue connecting to the site. Select "NO" to return to the previous page. Download or update the user certificate from the FirstPass Center site and then access the site again.
- The packet communication fee for accessing the FirstPass site is included in Pake-Houdai or Pake-Houdai Full.

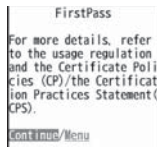
## Request Revocation of User Certificate

You can revoke the downloaded user certificate.

### 1 Site display of the FirstPass Center ▶ Other settings ▶ Revoke your certificate ▶ YES ▶ Enter your PIN2 code.

- Enter your PIN2 code within 60 seconds. When the code is not entered within 60 seconds, the connection is cut off as an error entry.
- See page 132 for PIN2 code.

### 2 Continue ▶ Continue ▶ Continue



#### Information

- To use FirstPass after revoking a certificate, you need to apply again for your user certificate to be issued and then download it.
- See page 190 for how to view the download user certificate.


<Certificate Host>

## Changing a CA Center

※Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

You can set the host for downloading the user certificate.

### 1 ▶ Operate certificate ▶ Certificate host ▶ Highlight <Not recorded> and press (Edit).

- If you select a stored host, the setting is changed to that host.
- To delete the stored host, press  (FUNC), select "Delete", enter your Terminal Security Code, and then select "YES".

## 2 Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Default URL	▶ Enter a default URL. • You can enter up to 100 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
Host address	▶ Enter a host address. • You can enter up to 99 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

## 3 Press (Finish).

#### ■ Before Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. By using FirstPass, client authentication is enabled, whereby the site and your FOMA phone exchange certificates, check the other party's certificate and perform mutual authentication.
- When requesting issue of a user certificate, carefully read "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" on the display, agree to this, and then make the request.
- You need to enter the PIN2 code to use the user certificate. Once you have entered your PIN2 code, all subsequent operations will be deemed to be done by you, so be careful not to let anyone else use your UIM or PIN2 code.
- If your UIM is lost or stolen, "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back page of this manual can revoke your user certificate.
- DoCoMo bears no obligation or responsibility with regard to the sites and information provided by FirstPass sites. Please solve the problem between you and FirstPass sites.
- DoCoMo and the CA do not guarantee security when you use FirstPass and SSL, so you should use them on your own judgment and responsibility.

## What is i-motion?

i-motion movies are composed of video, sound and music, and you can play them back obtaining from i-motion compatible sites into your FOMA phone. You can set the i-motion movie for a ring tone.

Two types of i-motion movies are available as shown below. The type of the obtained i-motion movie differs depending on the site or file.

You can save up to 10 Mbytes per i-motion movie.

Categories		Description
Type	Playback type	
<b>Standard (normal) type (can be saved)</b>	Plays back after obtaining	Plays back after obtaining all the data of an i-motion movie.
	Plays back while obtaining	Plays back while obtaining an i-motion movie. After obtaining, you can play it back in the same way as "Plays back after obtaining".
<b>Streaming type (cannot be saved)</b>	Plays back while obtaining	Plays back while obtaining an i-motion movie. The data is deleted after playback, so you cannot play it back again or save it to the FOMA phone.

## <Obtain i-motion Movie>

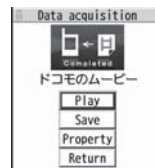
### Obtaining i-motion Movies from Sites

#### Play Back an i-motion Movie Obtained from a Site

#### 1 Select an i-motion movie from an i-motion obtainable site ▶ Play

See page 339 for the operation during playback.

- If an i-motion movie can be played back during obtaining, it will be played back during obtaining.
- If "i-motion auto-play" is set to "ON", the i-motion movie will be played back automatically after it is obtained.
- Select "Property" to display the i-motion information. (See page 340)
- See page 180 to save a screen memo.



Obtaining Completion display

#### Information

- Depending on the accessed site or an i-motion movie, you might not be able to obtain the data or play it back during obtaining, or play it back after obtaining. Also, you cannot obtain an i-motion movie in ASF format.
- See page 339 for the file formats of playable i-motion movies.
- Even when you stop playing back the data of standard (normal) type while obtaining, obtaining still continues.
- Even if "i-motion auto-play" is set to "ON", the data is not automatically played back after obtaining when it is played back while obtaining.
- For an i-motion movie that has restrictions on the number of playbacks, playable period, or playable deadline, "↓" is displayed at the head of the title. An i-motion movie with the playable period restricted cannot be played back before or after the restriction period. If you remove the battery and keep it aside for a long time, the date/time information in your FOMA phone might be reset. In that case, you cannot play back the i-motion movie that has restrictions on the playable period and playable deadline. See "i-motion info" for checking the playback restrictions.
- "i-motion info" of an i-motion movie and deadline information on the display that notifies you of a playable deadline are shown by date/time with "Summer time" set to "OFF".

### Information

- Depending on the line speed, line state, or radio wave conditions, the playback during obtaining might be suspended or the images might be distorted. You can repeatedly play back the standard (normal) type of i-motion movies after obtaining, but cannot play back the streaming type of i-motion movies.

## Save an i-motion Movie

You can save the obtained i-motion movie to your FOMA phone and set it for a ring tone, the Stand-by display, and the Wake-up display. You can save up to 101.6 Mbytes of files in total sharing the memory space with other data files. (See page 536)


### 1 Obtaining Completion display ▶ Save ▶ YES ▶ Select a destination folder.


- See page 186 for when i-motion movies are stored to the maximum.

### 2 Select "YES" to execute "Set motion".

Go to "Set  motion" on page 340.

## When downloading i-motion movie is suspended

When you press  (Quit) to suspend downloading or when downloading is suspended by an incoming call, the confirmation display appears asking whether to resume downloading.

Select "YES" to resume downloading the remaining part. Select "NO" to show the Obtaining Completion display for a partially savable i-motion file. Select "Save pt." to save that file to any folder in "  motion" in "Data box".

You can re-download the rest of the partially saved file from "Data box".

- The file name of the partially saved i-motion movie is "movie".
- When the playable period or playable deadline of the partially saved i-motion movie has expired, you cannot download the remaining segments of the file. You can delete the partially saved file when you try to download the file.

### Information

- Depending on the i-motion movie, you might not be able to save the obtained data to the FOMA phone.
- Partially saved i-motion movies cannot be played back from Data Box.

<  motion Auto-play >

## Setting Automatic Replay of i-motion Movies

You can set whether to play back an i-motion movie automatically, for when you have obtained a standard (normal) type of i-motion movie from a site or have selected a screen memo which contains a standard (normal) type of i-motion movie.

1  ▶ i-mode settings ▶  motion auto-play ▶ ON or OFF

### Information

- Note that a streaming type of i-motion movie is played back automatically even if this function is set to "OFF".

## What is i-Channel?



i-Channel is a service that news, weather forecast and others are distributed to i-Channel mobile phones as graphical information. Information is periodically received and tickers flow on the Stand-by display for the latest information. You can press the i-Channel key to show the Channel list. (See page 195)

Also, two types of channels are available, "Basic channel" which is provided by DoCoMo and "Favorite channel" which is provided by IPs (Information Providers). The packet communication fee that is charged for auto-updates of information distributed through "Basic channel" is not charged.

For "Favorite channel" which is enabled by registering your favorite channels, you are separately charged a packet communication fee for when information is automatically updated. Note that you are separately charged a packet communication fee for browsing detailed information. When you use the international roaming service, you are charged a packet communication fee for both auto-update and browsing detailed information.

- i-Channel is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis. (You need to subscribe to i-mode to apply for i-Channel.)
- For details on i-Channel, refer to the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- The i-Channel service is provided in Japanese only.

### Information

- When the FOMA phone is turned off or if radio wave conditions are bad such as when it is out of the service area, you may not be able to receive information even if you have contracted to the i-Channel service. In that case, select the channel for unsigned subscribers that appears by pressing ; then you can now receive information, and tickers flow on the Stand-by display. If your FOMA phone remains in the default state, you may not be able to receive information. Press , and then information is received and tickers flow on the Stand-by display.
- To receive i-Channel information overseas, you are charged a communication fee by channel (domestic talk-free service does not apply).
- After you cancel the contract for the i-Channel service, the ticker setting is automatically set to off.
- If you cancel the contract for the i-mode service before you cancel the contract for the i-Channel service, the ticker setting remains on.


## Using i-Channel

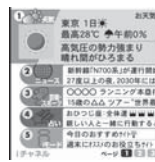
When "Ticker ON/OFF" is set to "ON", up to 10 ticker files for the latest information flow repeatedly on the Stand-by display. If you want to know more about the information, you can obtain the details from the Channel list.

### 1 Press .

The Channel list appears regardless of the "Ticker ON/OFF" setting.

●  blinks during receiving information.

- You cannot display the Channel list even when you press  when the Stand-by display appears on the horizontal display.





Channel list

### 2 Select an item (link).



### Information



- The ring tone does not sound and the vibrator does not work even when information comes in. In addition, the Call/Charging indicator does not light or flicker.
- Tickers are not displayed in the following cases:
  - When the information is automatically updated after that or when you press  to receive the latest information, tickers automatically flow.
  - When the UIM is replaced.
  - When "Host selection" is changed.
  - When "Reset i-Channel" is executed.
  - When "Reset settings" is executed.
  - When "Initialize" is executed.However, the information might not be automatically updated when "Host selection" is changed. To receive the latest information, press  to display the Channel list.
- When "Host selection" is changed, the i-Channel connecting end is also changed. (In ordinary, you do not need to change the setting.)

### Information

- Depending on your usage state, you might receive information from i-Channel when you display the Channel list.

## Setting How Ticker is Displayed

### 1 i-Channel ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Channel list	You can display the Channel list. Go to step 2 on page 195.
Ticker ON/OFF	You can set whether to display tickers on the Stand-by display. ▶ ON or OFF
Ticker font size set.	See "i-Channel ticker" on page 129.
Ticker color set.	You can set the background color and font color of ticker. ▶ Select a pattern. • You can check the ticker by pressing  (Play).
Ticker scroll speed	You can set the ticker flowing speed. ▶ Select a speed. • You can check the ticker by pressing  (Play).
Reset i-Channel	You can initialize the ticker information, set "Ticker ON/OFF" to "ON", and "i-Channel ticker" of "Private window" to "OFF". ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

### Information


- You can perform "Ticker ON/OFF", "Ticker font size set", "Ticker color set.", "Ticker scroll speed", and "Reset i-Channel" for each mode of 2in1. However, i-Channel information is initialized for all modes. Further, when 2in1 is deactivated, they become common to the settings in A Mode.

#### <Ticker ON/OFF>

- In Public Mode (Drive Mode), or during Lock All, tickers are not displayed.

### Information

#### <Reset i-Channel>

- Tickers are not displayed after you execute "Reset i-Channel". When the information is automatically updated after that or when you press  to receive the latest information, tickers automatically flow.

What is i-mode Mail? .....	198	<b>Setting Mail Settings</b>	
<b>Composing i-mode Mail/Deco-mail</b>		Sorting Mail Automatically to Each Folder .....	<Auto-sort> 231
Composing i-mode Mail to Send .....	<Compose Message> 198	Creating Mail Group .....	<Mail Group> 233
Composing Deco-mail to Send .....	202	Setting Mail and Messages R/F .....	<Mail Settings> 233
Creating Decome-Anime to Send .....	206	<b>Using Message Services</b>	
Composing Deco-mail or Decome-Anime by Using Template .....	<Template> 208	Receiving Messages R/F Automatically .....	<Receive Message R/F> 235
Attaching Files .....	<Attachments> 210	Reading Received Messages R/F .....	<Display Message R/F> 236
Using Photo-sending .....	<Photo-sending> 212	<b>Using Emergency Alert “Area Mail”</b>	
<b>Receiving and Operating i-mode Mail</b>		What is Emergency Alert “Area Mail”? .....	238
Receiving i-mode Mail Automatically .....	<Mail Auto-receive> 213	Receiving Emergency Alert “Area Mail” .....	238
Receiving Selected i-mode Mail .....	<Receive Option> 214	Setting Emergency Alert “Area Mail” .....	<Area Mail Settings> 239
Checking whether Center Holds i-mode Mail .....	<Check New Message> 215	<b>Using Chat Mail</b>	
Replying to Received i-mode Mail .....	<Reply> <Reply with Quote> 215	Using Chat Mail .....	<Chat Mail> 239
Forwarding Received i-mode Mail .....	<Forward> 216	Creating Chat Group .....	<Chat Group> 243
When i-mode Mail with Files Attached/Pasted is Received ...	216	<b>Using SMS</b>	
<b>Operating Mail Box</b>		Composing SMS Messages to Send .....	<Compose SMS> 244
Displaying Mail from Inbox/Outbox/Draft .....	<Inbox> <Outbox> <Draft> 218	Receiving SMS Messages Automatically .....	<Receive SMS> 245
How to See Inbox/Outbox/Draft List and Detailed Display ...	220	Checking whether Center Holds SMS Messages .....	<Check New SMS> 246
Managing Mail Messages .....	224	Setting SMS .....	<SMS Settings> 246
<b>Using Mail History</b>		<b>Using Web Mail</b>	
Displaying Sent/Received Mail Record .....	<Sent Address> <Received Address> 229	Using Web Mail .....	<Web Mail> 247

## What is i-mode Mail?

Once you subscribe to i-mode, you can exchange e-mails over the Internet as well as with other i-mode phones.

You can attach up to 10 files (photo or movie file, etc.) within 2 Mbytes in total besides mail text. The i-mode mail also supports Deco-mail, so you can change the character color, character size, and background color of mail text. Further, you can use the Deco-mail pictograms, so you can easily send pleasant messages.

- For details on i-mode mail, refer to the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

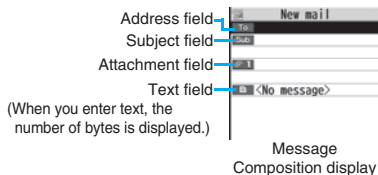
### <Compose Message>

## Composing i-mode Mail to Send

You can compose and send i-mode mail messages.

You can save up to 1,000 sent i-mode mail messages including SMS messages to the Outbox.

See page 202 for composing Deco-mail.



## 2 Select the address field ▶ Select an item.

**Phonebook** . . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address.

**Sent address** . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press



**Received address** . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press



**Mail group** . . . . . Select a mail group.

**Enter address** . . . . . Enter a mail address or phone number.

- You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.
- If the destination is an i-mode phone, you can send mail also by entering only the part preceding the "@" mark of a mail address.
- See page 199 for sending to multiple destination addresses.
- See page 199 for deleting an added address.

## 3 Select the subject field ▶ Enter a subject.

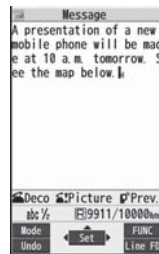
- You can enter up to 100 full-pitch/200 half-pitch characters.

## 4 Select the attachment field ▶ Select an item.

- See page 210 for how to select an attachment.

## 5 Select the text field ▶ Enter text.

- You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch/10,000 half-pitch characters.
- See page 200 for pasting a header or signature.
- You can select a Deco-mail picture by pressing and holding for at least one second.



Message Entry display

## 6 Press .

The animation display during transmission appears and the mail message is sent.

- To cancel sending midway, press or press and hold **CLR** (for at least one second). However, the mail message might be sent depending on the timing.















**Information**

- Depending on the radio wave conditions, the characters might not be displayed correctly at the destination.
- If you send an i-mode mail message to other carrier's mobile phone with a pictograph entered, the pictograph is automatically converted into a similar pictograph at the receiving end. Depending on the model or function of the receiving end's mobile phone, however, the pictograph might not be correctly displayed or be converted into a character or "=" when no corresponding pictograph is found.
- When the number of sent mail messages exceeds the FOMA phone's storage maximum, they will be overwritten from the oldest one. However, protected sent mail messages cannot be overwritten.
- You cannot compose an i-mode mail message when the number of sent mail messages in the Outbox has reached the maximum and those messages are all protected, or when 20 mail messages are saved to the Draft or the Draft is full. Release the protection for sent mail messages, or send/delete draft mail messages, and then operate again.
- When you select "Compose message" from the Function menu such as when entering a phone number, the mail address is entered as a destination address if the phone number and mail address are stored in a Phonebook entry. When multiple mail addresses are stored in the Phonebook entry, the first mail address is entered.
- If you try to send the mail whose address is a phone number headed by "184"/"186", the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete prefix numbers and send the mail.
- You cannot send mail to the addresses that include a comma (,).
- You can enter an address in the To, Cc and Bcc fields.
- If the destination address has been stored in the Phonebook with a secret code, the secret code will be added automatically at sending. However, even if a secret code is stored in the Phonebook, the secret code will not be added and the mail will be sent as ordinary i-mode mail unless the address is a phone number or "phone number@docomo.ne.jp".
- If you store the secret code and send mail to a mail address other than that of DoCoMo mobile phones, you might not receive the error message for unknown address.
- The recipients might not be able to receive the full length of the subject depending on their phones.
- You can send up to 2,000 full-pitch characters in text to the i-mode phone of the mova service.
- Each line feed is counted as one full-pitch character, and a space is counted as one full-pitch or half-pitch character.

**Information**

- The mail message you entered a Deco-mail pictogram becomes a Deco-mail message.
- In B Mode of 2in1, you cannot compose i-mode mail.

**Function Menu of the Message Composition Display**

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Send</b>	You can send the mail message. Go to step 7 on page 199.
<b>Preview</b>	Check the address, subject, text and attachments before sending. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can send the mail message by pressing  .</li> </ul>
<b>Save</b>	When composing or editing the mail, you can save it to the Draft.
<b>Operate receiver (Add receiver)</b>	You can add multiple addresses in the address field to send the same i-mode mail to multiple recipients simultaneously. You can send the same mail to up to five addresses at the same time. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>▶ Add receiver ▶ Select an item.</b></li> <li><b>Phonebook</b> . . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address.</li> <li><b>Sent address</b> . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press  .</li> <li><b>Received address</b> . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press  .</li> <li><b>Enter address</b> . . . . . Enter a mail address or phone number.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Consecutively add addresses, select &lt;Not entered&gt; and repeat the above operations.</b></li> <li>▶ Press   and select "Delete receiver" to delete the selected mail address. Select "YES".</li> <li>▶ Press   and select "Change rcv. type" to change the type of mail. (See page 200)</li> <li>▶ Select an entered mail address on the Mail Composition display to show the Address list.</li> <li>▶  </li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Operate receiver (Delete receiver)</b>	You can delete the selected address when there are multiple addresses. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Delete receiver ▶ YES</b></li> </ul>